

高中英语语法惯用法点点通

主 编 张少雄
副主编 张晓舸 刘可红
编 者 张晓舸 刘可红 杨 军
张 弢 张少雄

中南大学出版社

编者不可不说的话，读者不可不读的话

在中国，英语语法与惯用法，对很多英语学习者是一个十分头疼的问题。语法条律、语法术语、语法概念、语法理论等，往往弄得英语学习者，甚至英语教师一头雾水，头痛不已。这不，请看两个案例。

第一个是“句子成分”。英语学习者总想弄清楚“句子成分”，英语教师也总想讲清楚“句子成分”。下面一个简单的句子，就让学习者和教师犯糊涂了。

He begins to work.

句子中 He 是主语，begins 是谓语，这没有异议。但是 to work 是什么呢？在同一所中学，一部分教师说是宾语，一部分教师说是状语，于是英语教师分化为宾语派和状语派。宾语派和状语派长期争论，甚至还弄出了人事矛盾。校长想调解矛盾，带着两派代表到省城找一位名教授，请教授裁决。名教授知道一行人来意后，说：“我不能确定 to work 是宾语还是状语；这种探究对提高学习者的语言能力与交际能力有好处吗？”教授没有给出期待的答案，两位代表出门时忍不住嘀咕说：“还名教授哩，连 to work 是宾语还是状语都不知道！”

第二个是“动名词和现在分词的区别”。有的人先把动词的-ing 形式分为“动名词”与“现在分词”，再努力区分“动名词”和“现在分词”。而为了弄清“动名词”与“现在分词”的区别，英语教师往往要费很多口舌，英语学习者也往往要花很多时间与精力。英语教师经常给出这样的或类似的例子：

There is a sleeping dog in front of the small house.

There is a sleeping room inside the small house.

给出两个句子之后，英语教师开始分析与讲解哪一句的 sleeping 是现在分词，哪一句的 sleeping 是动名词，并给出区别“动名词”与“现在分词”的若干原则。在分析与讲解之后，学习者被要求理解与记忆这些“区分”原则，被要求实质性“区分动名词与现在分词”，被要求在使用时清楚是应该用“动名词”还是应该用“现在分词”等。

长期以来，英语语法与惯用法是这样教的，英语语法与惯用法是这样学的！在这样的教与学中，学习者理解与记诵一大堆语法条律、语法术语、语法概念和语法理论等，却听不懂、说不出、写不好，不能用英语获取信息与知识，不能用英语表达情感与思想。从小学到大学，英语学习者的时间与精力投入很大，可是十多年的时间与精力投入，换来的多是“费时低效”！

其实，所谓语法与惯用法，就是规范语言的语言规范。语言是人们交际的工具，在交际过程中，为了达成有效的表达与理解，人们自觉地使用大家所理解与接受的形式，并排斥不通行的形式，从而形成约定俗成的规范语言与语言规范。语言规范就是语法与惯用法，语法与惯用法就是语言规范。

对语言规范进行的种种描述，是语法理论，也简称为语法。语言规范是简单的事实，而语法理论却是复杂的探究。这些复杂的探究，对于专业语言研究者来说，是观点，也是学问；对于专业语言研究者以外的一切人来说，不仅是没有意义的饶舌，更是妨碍语言能力与交际技能发展的误区；对于初中与高中的学习者说，则是学习精力的误投，是青春年华的误置。

然而，在现实的英语教与学中，英语语法与惯用法偏偏沉沦为没有意义的饶舌，沉沦为限制学习者英语语言能力与交际能力发展的重大障碍。在语法条律、语法术语、语法概念、语法理论等的洪水中，学习者艰难地扑打着、挣扎着，眼睁睁地看着语言

规范被波浪冲散，看着语言能力与交际技能被旋涡淹没。这样的教与学，不“费时低效”才怪哩。

现在好啦。中华人民共和国教育部制定的全日制义务教育和普通高级中学《英语课程标准(试验稿)》(以下简称《课标》)颁布了。

在英语语法与惯用法方面，《课标》只要求学习者“理解与掌握”各种实实在在的“表达方式”，如“描述人和物的表达方式”、“描述时间、地点、方位的表达方式”和“比较人、物体及事物的表达方式”等，不要求学习者了解与记诵语法条律、语法术语和语法概念，更不要求学习者接受或自己构造系统的语法(理论)知识！

实际上，《课标》基本上摒弃了各种不必要的甚至有害的语法术语与语法概念。如果英语教师能按《课标》要求进行教学，如果英语学习者能按《课标》要求进行学习，上面两个案例所展示的教课方法或学习路径，应该很快会成为过去，应该很快会随风飘逝。《课标》不要求进行“句子成分”分析，只要求实际掌握六种“简单的基本句型”和部分从句的实际用法；不要求理解、掌握与区别“动名词”与“现在分词”等术语与概念，只要求实际掌握“动词的-ing形式”的实际用法……

这套《英语语法与惯用法点点通》(以下简称《点点通》)，正是根据这本《课标》)策划的，是严格遵循《课标》“基本理念”与“设计思路”、紧扣《课标》“课程目标”和“内容目标”及相关附件编写的。

这套《点点通》的主要任务，是帮助初中与高中学习者领会与掌握《课标》“内容标准”所要求的与“语法项目表”所列的语法项目及相关惯用法，不是向学习者输入不必要的与有害的条律、术语、概念与理论，而是帮助学习者掌握它们的实际用法。

《点点通》分为两册，初中与高中各一册；初中分册包含《课标》二级至五级要求掌握的语法与惯用法项目，高中分册包含《课

标》六级到八级要求掌握的项目。每册按照项目，分为若干个单元。每个单元都包括三大部分：语法惯用法导入阅读，语法与惯用法要点解析和语法惯用法要点运用。

导入阅读，首要目的是输入《课标》所说的“表达方式”，即实际的语法与惯用法范例。这样安排，是因为语法与惯用法是积累与积淀而成的，不是通过条律、概念与理论演绎出来的；语言实际是先出现的，语法条律、概念和理论是后产生的。《点点通》的点，在这里的意思就是点点积累和积淀。导入阅读，还有一个目的，那就是增加阅读量与扩展阅读面。为了达成这个目的，导入阅读严格按照《课标》“话题项目表”进行设计、选材与编排。“话题项目表”一共有 24 个大项目，每个大项目若干个子项目，少则 3 个，多则 10 个；子项目上标有“五级要求”、“八级要求”或“适用于两个级别”。“五级要求”项目和“适用于两个级别”的项目的较容易部分，编入初中分册；“八级要求”项目和“适用于两个级别”的项目的较难部分，编入高中分册。《点点通》两册导入阅读，在提供语法与惯用法范例的同时，覆盖《课标》的全部“话题项目”，学习者可以在阅读的过程中学习语法与惯用法，同时也在学习语法与惯用法的过程中阅读。

语法惯用法要点解析，是简明扼要地描述《课标》要求理解与掌握的语法与惯用法项目。所有简述，都不使用任何不必要的与有害的术语、概念和理论，不涉及空洞的与不切语言实际的理论或理论体系，而直接展示具体的与实际的“表达方式”，直接引导学习者使用这些“表达方式”。《点点通》的点，在这里的意思首先是要点，其次是具体的表达点。

《课标》的“内容标准”中的语法与惯用法目标是“理解与掌握”各种“描述……的表达方式”，“功能意念项目表”提供 10 个大意念项目 66 个子意念项目的典型表达方式，即典型短语、典型句子与典型句套子。“功能意念项目表”的各种典型表达方式，很

多正是“语法”目标中相关“描述……的表达方式”的典型方式。如：“语法”目标中有“理解、掌握比较人、物体及事物的表达方式”；“功能意念项目表”第9大项目“比较”中，“(60)同级比较”提供4个典型句子，“(61)差别比较”提供6个典型句子，“(62)相似和差别”提供5个典型句子，这15个句子都是“比较人、物体及事物的表达方式”。因为这种相关性，《点点通》的语法与惯用法要点简述，采用“功能意念项目表”中很多句子作为例句，并在所用句子后面加括号说明出自哪个子项目，如，标“(T60)”的出自第60，标“(T61)”的出自第61，标“(T62)”的出自第62，等等。在这里，《点点通》的点，意思是关联点。

语法惯用法要点运用主要是练习。这个部分的种种练习项目及具体内容，不是随意编制的，也不是根据编者的个人偏好拟定的，而是根据各种原则精心筛选之后编制的。筛选练习项目和它们的具体内容时，主要依据三个原则。一是根据《课标》对语法与惯用法的要求，参照《课标》的“功能意念项目表”和“词汇表”等，选择最常见的与最常用的表达方式。二是根据国际分级惯例，选择最低级的、出现频率最高的、与《课标》要求重合的表达方式。三是参照全国各地的中考与高考实际考题，选择经常被各地命题者作为考试点的表达方式。因此，《点点通》的点，在这里又有重合点、高频点和常考点等意思。

《点点通》的编者，试图将它编成一套综合性的书，一套科学性、趣味性和思想性鲜明的书，一套实用性、操作性与指导性强的书，一套独立的书，一套辅助的书，一套不为任何考试服务但可以切实提升中考与高考成绩的书，一套不跟任何教材走但因为紧扣《课标》又可以与任何一套教材配套的书……《点点通》是一部可塑性与适应性强的书，读者可以根据自己的实际情况，灵活决定它的使用时间与方法。

编者

目 录

Unit 1	(1)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(1)
Résumé (简历)	(1)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(2)
1. 履历表(Résumé)写法要点	(2)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(3)
Unit 2	(5)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(5)
A Letter of Application	(5)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(6)
1. 申请信(Letter of Application)写法要点	(6)
2. most 作修饰语	(7)
3. 名词性物主代词	(7)
4. although / though 从句	(7)
5. 动词 agree 句型	(7)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(8)
Unit 3	(11)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(11)
We Are Raising Children , Not Flowers !	(11)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(12)
1. as 引导时间状语从句	(12)

2. when 引导时间状语从句	(12)
3. begin doing 和 begin to do 的用法	(12)
4. rise 和 raise 用法	(12)
5. 动词 remind 用法	(13)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(13)
Unit 4	(16)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(16)
Teachers and Actors	(16)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(17)
1. must 与 have to 用法	(17)
2. can 和 be able to 用法	(17)
3. 同位语从句	(18)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(18)
Unit 5	(22)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(22)
The Two Willies	(22)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(23)
1. 介词 with 用法	(23)
2. let 用法(I)	(23)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(24)
Unit 6	(27)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(27)
For Sale	(27)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(28)
1. 房屋租赁广告	(28)
2. There be 句型	(28)
3. 限制性和非限制性定语从句	(28)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(29)

Unit 7	(31)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(31)
Libraries	(31)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(32)
1. borrow 和 lend 用法	(32)
2. 形容词和副词同级比较句型(I)	(32)
3. 真实条件句	(32)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(33)
Unit 8	(36)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(36)
Where to Live	(36)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(37)
1. prefer 用法	(37)
2. 动词 need 用法	(38)
3. 形容词与副词差别比较	(38)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(39)
Unit 9	(42)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(42)
Watching Television	(42)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(43)
1. used to 用法	(43)
2. allow 和 permit 用法	(43)
3. 动词 dare 用法	(44)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(44)
Unit 10	(46)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(46)
Keep a Diary or Journal	(46)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(47)

1. each 和 every 用法	(47)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(48)
Unit 11	(51)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(51)
The British Way of Life—Meals	(51)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(52)
1. 不定冠词用法	(52)
2. 集体名词用法(I)	(52)
3. 复合不定代词用法	(53)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(53)
Unit 12	(57)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(57)
Dictionary	(57)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(58)
1. 主谓一致与 a number of 用法	(58)
2. try to V/VP 和 try V-ing/ V-ing P 用法	(58)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(58)
Unit 13	(61)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(61)
A Welcome Speech	(61)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(62)
1. 反身代词用法	(62)
2. in front of 与 in the front of 区别	(63)
3. be afraid to V/VP 和 be afraid of 用法	(63)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(64)
Unit 14	(67)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(67)
A Return to the Middle School	(67)

II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(68)
1. 过去完成时用法	(68)
2. 以-ing 和-ed 为词尾的词的用法	(68)
3. can/ could (not) help 用法	(69)
4. 主谓倒装	(69)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(69)
Unit 15	(72)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(72)
Fishing with My Father	(72)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(73)
1. with 复合结构用法	(73)
2. 表语形容词用法(I)	(73)
3. 形容词与副词同级比较句型(II)	(74)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(74)
Unit 16	(76)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(76)
Computer Games	(76)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(77)
1. no 用法	(77)
2. find 与 discover 用法	(78)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(79)
Unit 17	(81)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(81)
The Year of the Women	
—Live Reports form Grammy Awards(葛莱美奖)... ..	(81)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(82)
1. 否定性副词与形容词用法	(82)
2. prove 用法	(83)

III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(83)
Unit 18	(86)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(86)
Homesickness	(86)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(87)
1. it 为引导词的强调句型	(87)
2. such 与 so 强调用法	(87)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(88)
Unit 19	(92)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(92)
Image and Colour	(92)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(93)
1. 关系副词 why 用法	(93)
2. 集体名词用法(II)	(93)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(93)
Unit 20	(95)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(95)
A Letter of Introduction	(95)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(96)
1. 介绍信写法	(96)
2. not only... but also... 用法	(96)
3. 现在进行时表示将来	(97)
4. none 用法	(97)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(98)
Unit 21	(100)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(100)
Greeting Conventions(习俗) in Chinese Culture ...	(100)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(101)

1. consist of 用法	(101)
2. consider 和 regard 用法	(101)
3. old 的比较级与最高级及其用法	(102)
4. both 用法	(102)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(103)
Unit 22	(105)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(105)
Applications For Entry to a College	(105)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(106)
1. 留学申请信写法	(106)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(106)
Unit 23	(108)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(108)
Shopping in America	(108)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(110)
1. do + V-ing 用法	(110)
2. do 的强调用法	(110)
3. 时间介词 at , on , in 用法	(110)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(111)
Unit 24	(113)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(113)
At the Mall	(113)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(115)
1. 提建议的常用句式	(115)
2. 价格表示法	(115)
3. be going to VP 用法	(115)
4. 动词 afford 用法	(116)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(116)

Unit 25	(118)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读.....	(118)
Bargaining	(118)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析.....	(119)
1. 讨价、还价常用表达法	(119)
2. advice 用法	(120)
3. x pair(s) of 用法	(120)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用.....	(120)
Unit 26	(123)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读.....	(123)
Malls in the U. S. A.	(123)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析.....	(124)
1. spend, take, cost 用法	(124)
2. 被动语态时态	(124)
3. all over 用法	(125)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用.....	(125)
Unit 27	(127)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读.....	(127)
English Cooking	(127)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析.....	(128)
1. used to NP/V-ing P 和 used to VP 用法	(128)
2. 形容词比较级修饰语	(129)
3. the same 用法	(129)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用.....	(129)
Unit 28	(132)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读.....	(132)
Ordering Lunch	(132)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析.....	(133)

1. 就餐与点菜表达法	(133)
2. 英语系动词用法	(133)
3. May I... 问句及回答	(134)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(134)
Unit 29	(136)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(136)
Table Manners	(136)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(137)
1. 祈使句	(137)
2. “V + NP + VP”结构	(137)
3. enough 用法	(138)
4. “ought to/should + have + V-ed”用法	(138)
5. serve 用法	(138)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(139)
Unit 30	(143)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(143)
Develop an Exercise Plan to Lose Weight	(143)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(144)
1. 特殊疑问词用法	(144)
2. 助动词 do 的替代用法	(144)
3. it 形式主语用法	(144)
4. so that 用法及结果状语从句	(145)
5. if 用法及真实条件从句	(145)
6. without 用法	(145)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(146)
Unit 31	(148)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(148)
Smoke Gets in Your Eyes	(148)

II. 语法惯用法要点解析·····	(149)
1. 现在完成时用法·····	(149)
2. 定语从句引导词用法·····	(149)
3. except 和 besides 用法·····	(149)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用·····	(150)
Unit 32·····	(153)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读·····	(153)
At the Hospital·····	(153)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析·····	(154)
1. 就诊问答基本表达法·····	(154)
2. accept 和 receive 用法·····	(155)
3. ought to 用法·····	(155)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用·····	(156)
Unit 33·····	(159)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读·····	(159)
A Traffic Accident·····	(159)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析·····	(159)
1. happen, occur 和 take place 用法·····	(159)
2. when, while, if, though 从句省略用法·····	(160)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用·····	(160)
Unit 34·····	(162)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读·····	(162)
Weather·····	(162)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析·····	(163)
1. V-ing P 与 VP 宾语用法·····	(163)
2. 状语从句及引导词用法·····	(163)
3. 谈论天气基本表达法·····	(164)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用·····	(164)

Unit 35	(166)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读.....	(166)
What is a Hurricane(飓风)?	(166)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析.....	(167)
1. 介词 with 用法	(167)
2. 情态动词 can 的用法	(167)
3. over 和 across 用法	(167)
4. begin V-ing P 和 begin to VP 用法	(168)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用.....	(168)
Unit 36	(170)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读.....	(170)
Going to a Movie	(170)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析.....	(171)
1. 同级比较否定式	(171)
2. 动词 think 用法	(171)
3. imagine 用法	(172)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用.....	(172)
Unit 37	(175)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读.....	(175)
A Brief History of Rock “n” Roll	(175)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析.....	(176)
1. 年代表示法	(176)
2. dress , wear 和 put on 意义和用法	(177)
3. 表示数量概念的限定词的用法	(177)
4. cross 和 across 用法	(178)
5. something 等复合不定代词修饰语	(178)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用.....	(178)
Unit 38	(180)

I. 语法惯用法导入阅读·····	(180)
Outdoor and Indoor Games ·····	(180)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析·····	(181)
1. which 和 whom 作介词宾语 ·····	(181)
2. watch, look at, see 用法 ·····	(181)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用·····	(182)
Unit 39 ·····	(185)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读·····	(185)
The Olympic Games ·····	(185)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析·····	(186)
1. 不用被动语态的动词 ·····	(186)
2. 时间频度表示法 ·····	(187)
3. such 和 so 用法 ·····	(187)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用·····	(188)
Unit 40 ·····	(189)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读·····	(189)
Dancing ·····	(189)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析·····	(190)
1. V-ing P 结构用法 ·····	(190)
2. 引导词 while 用法 ·····	(190)
3. other 用法 ·····	(191)
4. while, when, as 用法比较 ·····	(191)
5. not...but...用法 ·····	(191)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用·····	(192)
Unit 41 ·····	(191)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读·····	(191)
Police ·····	(191)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析·····	(195)

1. V-ed P 充当表语	(195)
2. be about to + VP	(195)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(195)
Unit 42	(197)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(197)
Do You Like Traveling?	(197)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(198)
1. V-ing P 和 V-ed 用法	(198)
2. 介词 by 用法	(198)
3. enjoy 用法	(198)
4. reach, get to, arrive 用法	(199)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(199)
Unit 43	(201)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(201)
Asking for the Way	(201)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(202)
1. 问路惯用基本表达法	(202)
2. keep on V-ing P 用法	(202)
3. until 与 till 用法	(203)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(203)
Unit 44	(206)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(206)
Jessica's Ball	(206)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(207)
1. 倒装	(207)
2. see sb V-ing P 和 see sb VP 用法	(208)
3. had better 用法	(209)
4. V-ing P 结构作状语	(209)

5. 情态动词推测用法	(209)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(209)
Unit 45	(212)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(212)
Hotel	(212)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(213)
1. 旅店基本惯用法	(213)
2. have sb + VP/V-ing P/V-ed P 用法	(213)
3. at 和 in(空间介词)用法	(214)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(214)
Unit 46	(216)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(216)
Differences Between American and British English	(216)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(217)
1. 同形词 lie 和 lie	(217)
2. It is V-ed that 结构	(218)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(218)
Unit 47	(221)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(221)
Language as a Tool of Culture Imperialism(帝国主义)	(221)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(222)
1. seem 用法	(222)
2. be to VP 用法	(223)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(223)
Unit 48	(226)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(226)

Do the English Speak English ?	(226)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析.....	(227)
1. neither... nor... 用法	(227)
2. the Adj./V-ing/V-ed 主谓一致	(227)
3. each other 和 one another 用法	(227)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用.....	(228)
Unit 49	(230)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读.....	(230)
Language	(230)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析.....	(231)
1. It is/was... 强调句型用法	(231)
2. worth, worthwhile 用法	(232)
3. mean to VP 和 mean V-ing P 用法	(232)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用.....	(232)
Unit 50	(235)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读.....	(235)
About Reading Books	(235)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析.....	(236)
1. 虚拟语气在条件从句中的用法	(236)
2. prevent 用法	(237)
3. “come + Adj./Adv./Prep.”短语	(238)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用.....	(238)
Unit 51	(241)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读.....	(241)
What the Leaf Said	(241)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析.....	(242)
1. 直接引语与间接引语	(242)
2. stop V-ing P 与 stop to VP 用法	(244)

3. let 用法(II)	(244)
4. go on V-ing P 和 go on to VP 用法	(245)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(245)
Unit 52	(247)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(247)
The Tiger	(247)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(248)
1. sure 用法	(248)
2. nearly 与 almost 用法	(249)
3. “So + V + S”倒装句型	(249)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(249)
Unit 53	(251)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(251)
Mt. Fuji	(251)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(252)
1. 过去时与现在完成时比较	(252)
2. 时间介词 since 和 for 用法	(252)
3. “某国人”名词用法	(253)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(254)
Unit 54	(256)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(256)
The United States	(256)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(257)
1. except 和 except for 用法	(257)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(258)
Unit 55	(261)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(261)
Fight Against Dust and Sand	(261)

II. 语法惯用法要点解析·····	(262)
1. as well as 用法·····	(262)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用·····	(262)
Unit 56·····	(264)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读·····	(264)
New Weapon in SARS Battle·····	(264)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析·····	(265)
1. 后缀-ly 用法·····	(265)
2. V-ing 结构作主语·····	(265)
3. intend, plan 和 aim 用法·····	(266)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用·····	(266)
Unit 57·····	(269)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读·····	(269)
Women Turn to Online Shopping·····	(269)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析·····	(270)
1. ahead of 用法·····	(270)
2. likely 用法·····	(270)
3. during 和 in 用法比较·····	(271)
4. 后缀-able 用法·····	(272)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用·····	(272)
Unit 58·····	(276)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读·····	(276)
Birds Suffer From Oil·····	(276)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析·····	(277)
1. hope 的用法·····	(277)
2. yet, still, already 用法·····	(278)
3. 前缀 un-用法·····	(278)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用·····	(278)

Unit 59	(280)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读.....	(280)
Water Worries	(280)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析.....	(281)
1. “no matter + 疑问词”用法	(281)
2. “It is + Adj. + for NP”和“ It is + Adj. + of NP”用法	(281)
3. 主语从句	(282)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用.....	(282)
Unit 60	(284)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读.....	(284)
WTO Entry Could Change Education	(284)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析.....	(285)
1. wish 用法	(285)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用.....	(286)
Unit 61	(288)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读.....	(288)
China	(288)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析.....	(289)
1. say, tell, speak 和 talk 用法	(289)
2. more 特殊用法	(289)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用.....	(290)
Unit 62	(292)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读.....	(292)
Ancient Egypt	(292)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析.....	(293)
1. 形容词顺序	(293)

2. separate 和 divide 用法	(293)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(294)
Unit 63	(296)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(296)
The Wooden Horse of Troy	(296)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(297)
1. to VP 结构内部变化	(297)
2. V-ed P 结构作后置定语	(298)
3. 目的状语从句	(298)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(298)
Unit 64	(301)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(301)
Bill Gates	(301)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(302)
1. little 和 few 否定用法	(302)
2. It's no use V-ing P 和 There is no use V-ing P 用法	(302)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(303)
Unit 65	(305)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(305)
Clothes	(305)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析	(306)
1. 短语 be made of , be made from , be made out of 和 be made into 用法	(306)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用	(307)
Unit 66	(309)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读	(309)
Youth	(309)

II. 语法惯用法要点解析·····	(310)
1. 抽象名词 youth 用法·····	(310)
2. “It is no wonder + 从句”用法·····	(310)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用·····	(311)
Unit 67 ·····	(313)
I. 语法惯用法导入阅读·····	(313)
Address at Gettysburg·····	(313)
II. 语法惯用法要点解析·····	(314)
1. score 及数表达法·····	(314)
2. remember to VP 和 remember V-ing P 用法·····	(315)
III. 语法惯用法要点运用·····	(315)
Key ·····	(317)

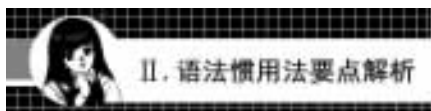
Experience

Pantry Pride Supermarket	August 2001 to present
8266 Broadway	Cashier and Office Worker
Elmhurst , New York 11373	Duties : Recording cash and charge sales
Manager : Mr. Micelli	
F. W. Woolworth Company	April 2000 to August 2000
976 Third Avenue	Part-time cashier
New York 10002	Duties : Pricing Merchandise
Manager : Mr. Pastore	

References

Mr. John Micelli , Manager
82-66 Broadway
Elmhurst , New York 11373
Mr. John Weigel , Asst. Professor
Division of Cooperative Education
31-10 Thomson Avenue
Long Island City , New York 11101

(160 words)

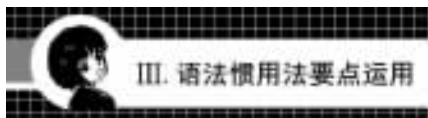


1. 履历表(Résumé)写法要点

履历表一般包括以下内容:(1)姓名、住址和电话号码,在网络时代人们还喜欢加上电子邮件地址;(2)标题用 Résumé, Résumé of Working Experience 或 Curriculum Vitae 均可;(3)工作经历,每项包括起讫日期(依由近而远的顺序排列)、工作的性质或职位名称、公司的名称和地址、公司的类别;(4)学历,包

括接受教育(特别是大学教育)机构名称及地址,所获学位及授予日期;(5)个人资料,包括出生日期、地点、国籍、婚姻状况、子女数、嗜好、会员活动、身高、体重、健康状况等。

写英文履历表还须注意以下几点:(1)一般采用无人称叙述法,如“received a B. A. in Literature”,“worked as a secretary”等。(2)要使人读起来一目了然,迅速获得信息,以便决定是否进一步考察申请人。这就决定履历表在文字表达上的特点是使用缩略语、名词短语、不完整句。为避免误解,公司、机构和学校名称须要写出全称。



1. 改错(2001 北京春季高考)

此题要求改正所给短文中的错误。对标有题号的每一行做出判断:如无错误,在该行右边横线上画一个勾(√);如有错误(每行只有一个错误),则按下列情况改正:

此行多一个词:把多余的词用斜线(\)划掉,在该行右边横线上写出该词,并用斜线划掉。

此行缺一个词:在缺词处加一个漏字符号(∧),在该行右边横线上写出加的词。

此行错一个词:在错的词下划一横线,在该行右边横线上写出改正后的词。

注意:原行没有错的不要改。

I used to love science class—all of them	1 _____
—biology, chemistry, geography, physics. I think I	2 _____
liked those classes because I felt that it helped me	3 _____
understand what the world works. For example, when	4 _____

I was a child , the rain was a mystery(奥秘). In one 5 _____
 class , I learned it rained. I think science classes 6 _____
 clear up mysteries. But then there is always more 7 _____
 mysteries look into. What was my least favourite class ? 8 _____
 That was math. After learn the basics of the subject , 9 _____
 nothing else seemed very practically to me. I never 10 _____
 saw how I could use it in my daily life.

2. 书面表达(1991 全国高考)

上海出版了一份“学生英文报”，对象是我国的中学生。请用英语为该报写一段人物介绍，介绍少年体育明星孙淑伟。内容要点如下：

(1) 简况：孙淑伟 (Sun Shuwei) , 男 , 14 岁 , 广东 (Guangdong)人

(2) 训练项目：跳水(diving)

(3) 取得成绩：第十一届亚运会冠军，第六届世界游泳锦标赛冠军

(亚运会：the Asian Games 冠军：champion 游泳锦标赛：swimming championships)

(4)其他情况：从小就喜欢游泳，8岁进广东省跳水队；在学校里认真学习，在跳水队里认真训练，13岁进入国家队；一年后(1990)夺得第十一届亚运会金牌；今年年初获第六届世界游泳锦标赛冠军

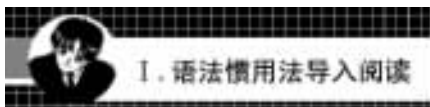
注意：

① 要有标题。

② 介绍须包括所有内容要点，但不要逐条译成英语。

③ 介绍的篇幅为 80 ~ 120 个词。

Unit 2



A Letter of Application

Dear Sir ,

Your advertisement offers a most tempting job to a young man just out of college. I can't think of any job I'd like better than consumer research (消费者调查) for a famous organization like yours. I look upon it as a wonderful opportunity(机会), and here is what I can offer you in return.

I am 22 years of age , make a good appearance and get along very well with people.

I have an inquisitive(好盘根问底的) mind. I enjoy finding out about things. I have good humor , and the ability to draw people out.

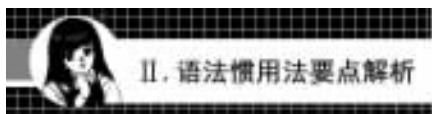
Perhaps you will agree that these qualities plus enthusiasm(热情), persistence , and the willingness to work hard and long make me acceptable for the job you offer.

I specialized in advertising and merchandising at New York University , from which , I graduated in June , and I have unusual letters of recommendation from my instructors in these subjects. I should like the opportunity of showing them to you.

Although I have no actual experience in consumer research , I am familiar with the procedure , and fully understand its significance in charting buying habits and trends.

I enclose a card addressed to myself , in the hope you will use it to tell me when to come for an interview. Or if you prefer calling , my telephone number is 6146 ~ 3458.

Sincerely yours ,
Rocky Bleier
(220 words)



1. 申请信(Letter of Application)写法要点

申请信的格式。一封完整的求职信通常包括四个方面:(1)写信的目的或动机;(2)个人资料;(3)备询人员或推荐人及其联络方式;(4)结尾请求收件者考虑给予机会或进一步了解申请人的机会。申请信语言要力求准确、简洁,语气必须肯定、自信。

求职信惯用表达法。如:

I wish to/ I'd like to apply for the post of. . . advertised in the. . . on. . .

In reply to/ In answer to/ Replying to/ Referring to your advertisement in today's issue of. . . for. . . , I respectfully offer/ tender my services for the situation.

Please consider me an applicant for the position which you advertised in China Daily of December 3.

Learning from Mr. S. P. Chen that you are looking for a sales manager , I should like to apply for the position.

Like many other young men ,I am looking for a position. I want to get started. At the bottom , perhaps , but started.

2. most 做修饰语

most 做修饰语，前面不用定冠词 the 时，相当于 very。如：
This is a most difficult work for those kids to do.

3. 名词性物主代词

名词性物主代词，功能相当于名词，意义等于形容词性物主代词加被修饰的名词。它在句中可用做主语、表语、宾语，还可与 of 构成短语做定语。例如：I can't think of any job I'd like better than consumer research for a famous organization like yours. 句中 yours 相当于 your organization。

4. although /though 从句

although 与 though 引导让步状语从句，绝对不能与 but 等并列连词连用，但主句可包含 yet 和 still 等副词。如：Although they did heavy work that day , they were still in high spirits. 汉语习惯讲“虽然……，但是……”，部分英语学习者受此影响，在英语中也说“although/ though... , but...”这种负迁移要注意克服。

5. 动词 agree 句型

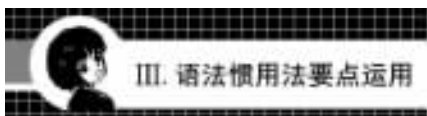
动词 agree 有“同意”、“赞成”、“承认”等多种意思，句型变化也较多样，常见的有：(1) agree with/ about/ on/ to N；(2) agree to V；(3) agree that (宾语从句)；(4) It is agreed that (主语从句)。如：

I agree with you about his latest book — it's so interesting.

We agree to leave at once.

We all agree that the idea is a good one.

It is generally agreed that she is the best tennis player in the country.



1. 单项填空

- (1) Some of the stamps belong to me , while the rest are _____.
(2004 上海春季高考)
- A. him and her B. his and hers
C. his and her D. him and hers
- (2) Although he has lived with us for years , he _____ us much impression. (2004 上海春季高考)
- A. hadn't left B. didn't leave
C. doesn't leave D. hasn't left
- (3) Playing tricks on others is _____ we should never do. (2004 湖南高考)
- A. anything B. something C. everything D. nothing
- (4) —How about eight o'clock outside the cinema ?
—That _____ me fine. (2004 全国高考)
- A. fits B. meets C. satisfies D. suits
- (5) It was evening _____ we reached the little town of Winchester.
(2004 天津高考)
- A. that B. until C. since D. before
- (6) Mr. Hall understands that _____ math has always been easy for him , it is not easy for the students. (2003 安徽高考)
- A. unless B. since C. although D. when

2. 阅读理解(2004 湖南高考)

Princeton University

Location

The University is in Princeton , New Jersey. It is an hour's train

ride south of New York City and an hour's train ride north of Philadelphia.

Students

There are 4 ,600 undergraduate(本科生). There are also 1 ,900 graduates students , but Princeton is unusual among universities in having a student body made up largely of undergraduates.

Faculty

Princeton has about 700 full-time faculty members. There are another 300 or so part-time and visiting faculty. All faculty members at Princeton are expected to teach and research.

Degrees

Princeton offers two undergraduate degrees : the bachelor(学士) of arts (A. B.) degree and the bachelor of science in engineering (B. S. E.) degree.

Academic Year

An academic year runs from September to late May and lasts two terms (fall and spring). A normal course load is four or five courses per term , although many students take extra courses.

Residences

Princeton provides housing for all undergraduate students. Freshmen and second-year students are required to spend their first two years in one of five colleges. Each college has its own dining hall , common rooms , and computer centers.

Fees and Expenses (Academic Year 2004 ~ 2005)

Tuition(学费) : \$ 29 ,910

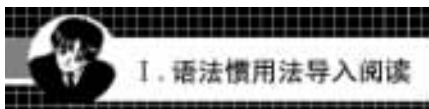
Room and board : \$ 8 ,387

Other expenses (books , telephone , etc.) : \$ 3 ,083

Total : \$ 41 ,380

- (1) How many kinds of faculty members are there in Princeton University ?
- A. One. B. Two. C. Three. D. Four.
- (2) In Princeton University , an undergraduate will pay at least _____ for the Academic Year 2004 ~2005 besides tuition.
- A. \$ 41 ,380 B. \$ 52 ,850
C. \$ 11 ,470 D. \$ 8 ,387
- (3) In what way in Princeton University is different from other American universities according to the text ?
- A. It has five colleges.
B. Its students are mainly undergraduates.
C. It provides housing for all undergraduate students.
D. All the faculty members at Princeton are expected to teach and research.
- (4) Which of the following is NOT true ?
- A. Princeton offers two undergraduate degrees.
B. An academic year lasts about nine months in Princeton University.
C. Undergraduates should spend their first two years in one of five colleges.
D. It's about an hour's train ride from Princeton University to the north of New York City.

Unit 3



We Are Raising Children , Not Flowers !

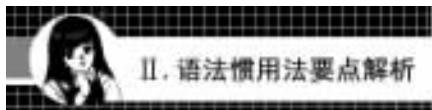
David , my next-door neighbor , has two young kids aged five and seven. One day he was teaching his seven-year-old son Kelly how to push the lawn mower (除草机) around the yard. As he was teaching him how to turn the mower around at the end of the lawn , his wife , Jan , called to him to ask a question. As David turned to answer the question , Kelly pushed the lawn mower right through the flower bed at the edge of the lawn — leaving a two-foot wide path leveled (削平) to the ground !

When David turned back around and saw what had happened , he began to lose control. David had put a lot of time and effort into making those flower beds the envy of the neighborhood. As he began to raise his voice to his son Jan walked quickly to him , put her hand on his shoulder and said , “ David , please remember we’re raising children , not flowers !”

Jan reminded me how important it is as a parent to remember our priorities (优先权). Kids and their self-respect are more important than any physical object they might break or destroy. The flowers are already dead. We must remember not to add to the destruction by

breaking a child's spirit and deadening his sense of liveliness.

(210 words)



1. as 引导时间状语从句

as 引导时间状语从句，表示“当……时”或“一边……，一边……”，主句和从句的动作同时发生。如：As he was teaching him how to turn the mower around at the end of the lawn, his wife, Jan, called to him to ask a question.

2. when 引导时间状语从句

when 引导时间状语从句，表示主句动作和从句动作同时发生，或从句动作发生在主句动作之前。如：I was going out when David came.

3. begin doing 和 begin to do 的用法

使用 begin doing 与 begin to do 要注意几点：

(1) 谈及一项长期活动或开始一种习惯时，使用 doing。如：How old were you when you first began playing the piano?

(2) begin, start 用进行时时，后面用 to do。如：I was beginning to get angry.

(3) 后接 know, understand, realize 这类动词时，常用 to V 形式。如：I begin to understand the truth.

(4) 以物做主语时，用 begin to do。如：The ice began to melt.

4. rise 和 raise 用法

rise 和 raise 都有“升起”和“上升”的意义。“rise”是不及物动词，用于 SV 句型。如：The sun is rising. “raise”是及物动词，用

于 SVO 句型，即后面可以接宾语。如：He raised his voice in anger. 此外，raise 还有“养育”和“养殖”、“种植”等意义，用于 SVO 句型。如：It is difficult to raise a family of so many members.

5. 动词 remind 用法

动词 remind 意思是“使想起，使记起，使回想”，用法结构较多，常见的有：(1) remind O；(2) remind O to V；(3) remind O of NO；(4) remind O Cl (宾语从句，that 从句最为常见)。如：

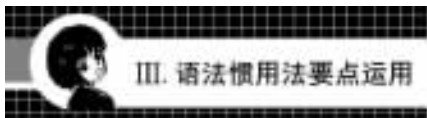
I must write to my parents. Will you remind me?

Remind me to write to my parents.

You remind me of your father.

She reminded me that I hadn't written to my parents yet.

He reminds us how hard we have to work.



1. 根据对话内容，从对话后的选项中选出能填入空白处的最佳选项。选项中有两项为多余选项。(2001 北京高考)

Mrs. Jackson : Hello ?

Richard : Mum , it's Richard. 1

Mrs. Jackson : Oh , Richard. 2

Richard : Yes , yes , fine. Mum , I was wondering. . . do you think you could lend me some money till the end of the month ?

Mrs. Jackson : Oh , Richard. 3 You really must learn to plan your money properly.

Richard : Look , Mum , if you can just help me out this time. 4

Mrs. Jackson : 5 Listen , I'll do it this time. This is really the last time.

Richard : Oh , thanks , Mum.

Mrs. Jackson : Bye. . . and next time , you could phone just for a chat !

A. Don't tell me you're buying another expensive computer.

B. How are you ?

C. I promise I'll be more careful in future.

D. Er. . . I will help you save money.

E. Is everything all right with you ?

F. Well , we'll see about that.

G. I'm so glad to get your call.

2. 单项填空

(1) Now that she is out of a job , Lucy _____ going back to school , but she hasn't decided yet. (2004 北京高考)

A. had considered

B. has been considering

C. considered

D. is going to consider

(2) —What were you doing when Tony phoned you ?

—I had just finished my work and _____ to take a shower.

(2004 天津高考)

A. had started

B. started

C. have started

D. was starting

(3) We are living in an age _____ many things are done on computer. (2003 北京春季高考)

A. which

B. that

C. whose

D. when

(4) Sales of CDs have greatly increased since the early 1990s , when people _____ to enjoy the advantages of this new technology.

(2004 江苏高考)

A. begin

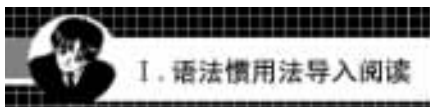
B. began

C. have begun

D. had begun

- (5) _____ is often the case , we have worked out the production plan. (2004 江苏高考)
- A. Which B. When C. What D. As
- (6) Don't be afraid of asking for help _____ it is needed. (2003 全国高考)
- A. unless B. since C. although D. when
- (7) _____ , some famous scientists have the qualities of being both careful and careless. (2004 上海春季高考)
- A. Strangely enough B. Enough strangely
C. Strange enough D. Enough strange
- (8) _____ is reported in the newspaper , talks between the two countries are making progress. (2004 北京高考)
- A. It B. As C. That D. What
- (9) —When will you come to see me , Dad ?
—I will go to see you when you _____ the training course.
(2003 北京高考)
- A. will have finished B. will finish
C. are finishing D. finish

Unit 4



Teachers and Actors

To be a good teacher , you need some of the gifts (才能) of a good actor : you must be able to hold the attention and interest of your audience ; you must be a clear speaker , with a good , strong , pleasing voice which is fully under your control ; and you must be able to act what you are teaching , in order to make its meaning clear.

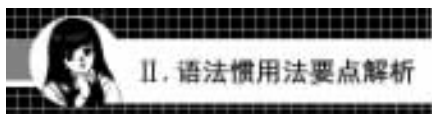
Watch a good teacher , and you will see he does not sit motionless (静止不动的) before his class : he stands the whole time he is teaching ; he walks about , using his arms , hands and fingers to help him in his explanations , and his face to express feelings. Listen to him , and you will hear the loudness , the quality and the musical note of his voice.

The fact that a good teacher has some of the gifts of a good actor doesn't mean that he will indeed be able to act well on the stage , for there are very important differences between the teacher's work and the actor's. The actor has to speak words which he has learnt by heart ; he has to repeat exactly the same words each time he plays a certain part , even his movements and the ways in which he fixed

beforehand(事先). What he has to do is to make all these seem natural on the stage.

A good teacher works in quite a different way. His audience takes an active part in his play : they ask and answer questions , they obey orders , and if they don't understand something , they say so. The teacher therefore has to suit his act to the needs of his audience , which is his class. He cannot learn his part by heart ,but must invent it as he goes along.

(290 words)



1. must 与 have to 用法

must 与 have to 用法有同有异。

(1) must 与 have to 都可表达“必须”的意思，must 往往表示说话人主观判断，而 have to 一般强调主体受客观条件迫使、不得不做某事。如：He said that they must work hard. 又如：My brother was very ill , so I had to call the doctor in the middle of the night.

(2) must 只有一种形式，而 have to 有人称、数、时态的变化。must 用于一般现在时和一般将来时，其他时态中用 have to 代替；但 must 可用于间接引语中表示过去的必要或义务。

(3)在否定结构中：mustn't 表示“禁止”，don't have to 表示“不必”。

如：You don't have to tell him about it.

You mustn't tell him about it.

2. can 和 be able to 用法

can 和 be able to 都可表示“能”的意思，但 can 只有现在式和

过去式(could)两种形式, be able to 可以用于各种时态。下面几种情况下, 只能用 be able to : (1)助动词后; (2)情态动词后; (3)表示过去某时刻动作; (4)用于句首表示条件; (5)表示成功地做到某事, 例见选文。又如:

He can ride a bike. (T25)

He can't swim. (T25)

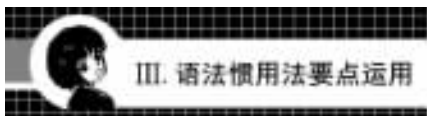
He's able to pass the math exam. (T25)

He's unable to walk anymore. (T25)

He was able to flee Europe before the war broke out.

3. 同位语从句

同位语从句, 是复合句中充当同位语的从句。抽象名词 fact, idea, news, hope, thought, belief, doubt, question, answer 等之后, 经常可以带由 that 引导的同位语从句, 以说明它们在特定语境中的具体含义。如: The fact that studies serve for delight, for ornament, and for ability has been proved again and again.



1. 完形填空 (2000 全国高考)

I climbed the stairs slowly, carrying a big suitcase, my father following with two more. By the time I got to the third floor, I was 1 and at the same time feeling lonely. Worse still, Dad 2 a step and fell, sending my new suitcases 3 down the stairs. "Damn!" he screamed, his face turning red. I knew 4 was ahead. Whenever Dad's face turns red, 5.

How could I ever 6 him to finish unloading the car 7 screaming at me and making a scene in front of the other girls, girls I

would have to spend the 8 of the year with ?Doors were opening and faces peering out(探出) , as Dad walked 9 close behind. I felt it in my bones that my college life was getting off to a(n) 10 start.

“ 11 the room , quickly ,” I thought. “ Get him into a chair and calmed down. ” But 12 , would there be a chair in Room 316 ?Or would it be a(n) 13 room ?

14 I turned the key in the lock and 15 the door open , with Dad 16 complaining (抱怨) about a hurting knee or something. I put my head in ,expecting the 17 . But to my 18 , the room wasn't empty at all ! It had furniture , curtains , a TV , and seven paintings on the walls.

And there on a well-made bad sat a my new 19 , dressed neatly , greeting me with a nod , she said in a soft voice , “ Hi , you must be Cori. ” Then ,she 20 the music and looked over at 21 , “ And of course , you're Mr. Faber ,” she said 22 . “ Would you like a glass of iced tea ?” Dad's face turned decidedly 23 before he could bring out a “ yes. ”

I knew 24 that Amy and I would be 25 and my first year of college would be a success

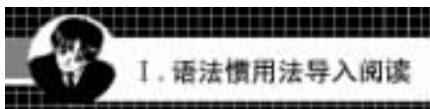
- | | | | |
|------------------|---------------|--------------|------------|
| (1) A. helpless | B. lazy | C. anxious | D. tried |
| (2) A. took | B. minded | C. missed | D. picked |
| (3) A. rolling | B. passing | C. dropping | D. turning |
| (4) A. suffering | B. difficulty | C. trouble | D. danger |
| (5) A. go ahead | B. look out | C. hold on | D. give up |
| (6) A. lead | B. help | C. encourage | D. get |
| (7) A. after | B. without | C. while | D. besides |
| (8) A. best | B. beginning | C. end | D. rest |

- (9) A. with difficulty B. in a hurry
 C. with firm steps D. in wonder
- (10) A. fresh B. late C. bad D. unfair
- (11) A. Search B. Find C. Enter D. Book
- (12) A. in fact B. by chance
 C. once more D. then again
- (13) A. small B. empty C. new D. neat
- (14) A. Finally B. Meanwhile
 C. Sooner or later D. At the moment
- (15) A. knocked B. forced C. pushed D. tried
- (16) A. yet B. only C. even D. still
- (17) A. worst B. chair C. best D. tea
- (18) A. regret B. disappointment
 C. surprise D. knowledge
- (19) A. roommate B. classmate
 C. neighbour D. companion
- (20) A. turned on B. turned down
 C. played D. enjoyed
- (21) A. Dad B. me
 C. the door D. the floor
- (22) A. questioning B. wondering
 C. smiling D. guessing
- (23) A. red B. less pale C. less red D. pale
- (24) A. soon B. there C. later D. then
- (25) A. sisters B. friends C. students D. fellows

2. 改错题(2000 全国高考)

此题要求改正所给短文中的错误。对标有题号的每一行做出判断；如无错误，在该行右边横线上画一个(√)；如有错误(每

Unit 5

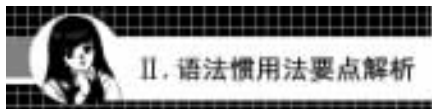


The Two Willies

Only five years old , my son Willie shows opposite sides in his behavior. One piece of him is quiet and shy , especially when he is with strangers. Last month I had to drag him up the steps at Presbyterian Nursery School for his first day. Willie clutched(抓住) at my leg in silent terror as we stood at the doorway to his room. Two little boys sat at the table near the window and they giggled(咯咯笑) to each other. Nearby a girl and a boy dressed and undressed two rag dolls. “ Well , so this is Willie , ” said his teacher , Miss Natalie , with a bright smile , “ Come , let’s say Hello to the rest of the class. ” But he stared without a sound. When Miss Natalie led Willie from child to child , saying his name , Willie never breathed a word. After two months , he is still the quietest boy in the class. But just let him loose in the backyard of our house and he turns into a wild man. Yesterday a warm fall afternoon , he hung by his ankles(脚踝) from an elm(榆树) as my heart pounded. Calling like a monkey and beating his chest , he swung back and forth. When Charlotte , my next-door neighbor’s four-year-old daughter , came to play , Willie shouted at her like a plane about to crash and pushed her to the grass.

She cried loudly ,but Willie showed no mercy. My psychology(心理学) teacher tells me that my son is perfectly normal for his age ,but he is not at all easy to understand at this stage.

(258 words)



1. 介词 with 用法

介词 with 意义较多，相应的用法也较多，概括起来，主要有三类。

- (1) 表示联系，协同，合作等；
- (2) 表示具备、拥有、获取(特征、属性、财物等)；
- (3) 表示工具，方式，伴随状况，原因，态度等。如：

I have to discuss the plans with my classmates.

He spent the summer holidays with his parents.

Do you know the boy with a camera ?

I'll do it with pleasure.

I'm pleased with your spoken English. (T36)

2. let 用法(I)

let 在 VOC(动词 + 宾语 + 宾语补足语)结构中，C(宾补)主要有三种形式：(1)Adv/ Adv. P；(2) Prep P；(3) V/VP(即不带 to 的不定式)。如：

Let him in.

Let the boy into the room.

Let us go to the cinema.

Let him loose for a while.

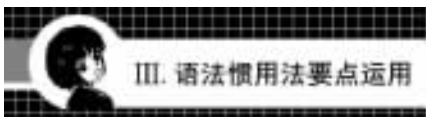
Let there be no mistake.

试比较 allow 在 VOC 结构中, C 的主要形式: (1) Adv/Adv. P; (2) Prep P; (3) to VP(带 to 的不定式)。如:

We don't allow children in.

She won't allow the children into the house.

Allow me to introduce Mr. Smith.



1. 完形填空 (1998 全国高考)

Ella Fant was a middle-aged lady who lived with her only son John in a small house. She 1 John very much. In her 2 he couldn't do anything 3. Every morning she would give him breakfast 4 bed and bring him the papers to 5. It isn't really true that he was too 6 to work—in fact he had tried a few 7. First of all he was a window-cleaner and in his first week he managed to 8 at least six windows. Then he 9 a bus conductor and on his second 10 a passenger stole his bag with all the fares(车费)collected. He 11 lost his job as a postman 12 he sent off all the letters when he should have taken them to people's houses. It seemed that there was 13 suitable work for him. So he 14 to join the army. Mrs. Fant was so 15 about this that she told the 16 to all her neighbours. "My John is good to be a soldier," she said. "He is going to be the best soldier there 17 was, I can tell you!"

Then the great day came 18 he was to march past the palace in the parade (接受检阅的队伍). His 19 mother travelled to the city early in the morning to be sure of getting a good 20 in the crowd.

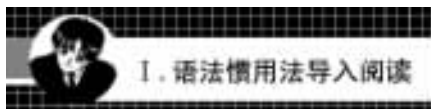
The parade was full of sound and colour. But when John and his 21 came in sight some of the people watching 22 laughing at the one who couldn't keep pace with the other as they marched along.

But Ella Fant , who was filled with 23 , shouted at the top of her voice :“ Look at 24 ! They're all out of 25 except my John ! Isn't he the best !”

- (1) A. depended on B. waited on
 C. trusted D. loved
- (2) A. hope B. eyes C. head D. beliefs
- (3) A. wrong B. great C. good D. strange
- (4) A. to B. at C. in D. by
- (5) A. check B. read C. keep D. sign
- (6) A. lazy B. young C. weak D. shy
- (7) A. ones B. years C. tasks D. jobs
- (8) A. rub B. drop C. break D. clean
- (9) A. followed B. met C. became D. found
- (10) A. day B. try C. route D. chance
- (11) A. thus B. even C. once D. only
- (12) A. even if B. so that C. because D. though
- (13) A. some B. such C. less D. no
- (14) A. began B. promised C. managed D. decided
- (15) A. excited B. worried C. anxious D. curious
- (16) A. incident B. change C. news D. matter
- (17) A. yet B. ever C. never D. just
- (18) A. where B. since C. when D. till
- (19) A. proud B. kind C. strict D. lucky
- (20) A. time B. position
 C. experience D. impression

- (21) A. neighbours B. army officer
 C. mother D. fellow soldiers
- (22) A. couldn't help B. shouldn't burst out
 C. stopped D. kept
- (23) A. sadness B. happiness C. surprise D. regret
- (24) A. them B. those C. that D. him
- (25) A. sight B. order C. mind D. step

Unit 6



For Sale

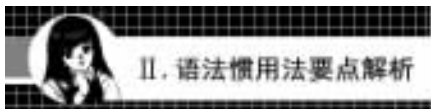
A beautiful 4 bedroomed house , built in 1989 , on St. Andrews Avenue. The house stands on its own in the middle of trees and open space , away from the road. There is a large garden with a beautiful lawn and flower-beds. The house is only about 1 mile from the center of the town , which has a large shopping center , cinemas , a theatre and so on. The railway station is also very close.

The house is heated by gas central heating. There are four bedrooms , and a bathroom. The biggest bedroom also has a second bathroom. Downstairs there is a dining room and a very large living room. The kitchen is next to the dining room , and there are cupboards and equipment already fitted. From the front door , the visitor comes into a lobby(门厅) , with a cloakroom(衣帽间) to the right. Then , on the right of the stairs is the boiler room(热水房). The hall leads into the kitchen. The house is very well decorated and painted. There is also a garage.

Cost : \$ 35000

Further information from Hazletts Estate Agents

(179 words)



1. 房屋租赁广告

房屋租赁广告主要由房屋地址；房屋情况；租金；联系方式等几部分构成。其写作风格主要表现为行文简洁，常用缩略词、短语或不完整句，同时尽可能省略非实质性词语，只选最重要的词用黑体排印，其他部分用小字体，以节省篇幅。

2. There be 句型

There be 句型表示存在，又称存在句。基本结构为“**There + be + S(主语)**”。使用存在句要注意三点。

(1) 如果主语是并列名词或名词性词组，动词 be 形式应与邻近者保持数一致。如：

Downstairs there is a dining room and a very large living room.

There are four bedrooms and a bathroom.

主语之后，可以加定语。如：

There is a car waiting outside.

Is there anything I can do for you ?

There are five differences between the two pictures. (T62)

(2) be 动词之前，可以加助动词或情态动词。如：

There must be some mistake here.

Is there going to be a meeting tonight ?

(3) be 动词可以由带有存在意义的动词或动词短语替代，包括 live, stand, lie, seem to be, happen to be 等。如：

There happened to be nobody in the classroom.

There flows a river around the city.

3. 限制性和非限制性定语从句

定语从句有限制性和非限制性两种。限制性定语从句紧贴先

先行词,先行词与从句之间一般不用逗号隔开。非限制性定语从句不紧贴先行词,先行词与从句之间常用逗号分开。例如: The house is only about 1 mile from the center of the town, which has a large shopping center, cinemas, a theatre and so on.

判断定语从句是限制性的还是非限制性的,往往取决于全句意思或上下文。先行词是专有名词或由物主代词和指示代词所修饰的名词时,定语从句通常是非限制性的。如:

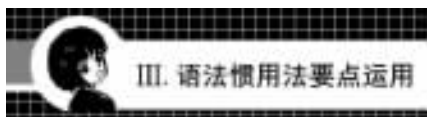
Charles Smith, who was my former teacher, retired last year.

My house, which I bought last year, has got a lovely garden.

非限制性定语从句还能修饰整个主句,这时从句谓语动词用第三人称单数。如:

He seems not to have grasped what I meant, which greatly upsets me.

注意:that 和 why 不能引导非限制性定语从句。



1. 翻译

(1) 保护环境是每个公民的职责。(It...)(2002 上海高考)

(2) 请尽早做出决定,不然你会坐失良机。(or)(2003 上海高考)

(3) 那些未曾去过那个小村庄的人很难描绘出它的美丽。(It...)(2003 上海高考)

(4) 这部有关第一次世界大战的历史小说引人入胜,我简直爱不释手。(so... that)(2003 上海高考)

(5) 他很后悔失去了获得奖学金的机会。(regret)(2001 上海高考)

(6) 学生们逐渐认识到友谊胜过金钱，患难朋友才是真朋友。(realize)(2001 上海高考)

2. 书面表达(2003 全国高考)

假设你是李华，你的英国笔友 Bob 将于 9 月到你所在城市的建新华文学校学中文，来信请你在学校附近为他找一套住房。请根据图画提供的信息，写信介绍住房的情况，并告知住房面积为 25 平方米，月租 500 元。



注意：① 词数：100 左右。

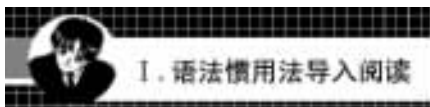
② 参考词汇：房租 rent n.

Dear Bob ,

Yours ,

Li Hua

Unit 7



Libraries

There is a public library in every town in Britain. There are branch libraries in many villages. Anyone may borrow books, and it costs nothing to borrow them. In some places you may borrow as many books as you are likely to want, but in others you are limited to a certain number of which some may be novels. Books may be kept for as long as is reasonable, so there is no difficulty in having all the reading that is needed.

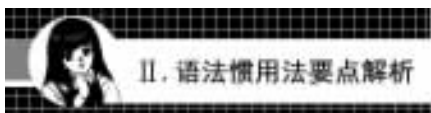
The latest novels are always in great demand, and non-fiction books, for example, books on history, science, and gardening are also popular.

If the book you want is out, you may ask for it to be kept for you. And if you pay the cost of sending a postcard, the librarian will let you know when the book has been returned and is ready for you.

Most public libraries also have a reading room and a reference library(资料室). In the reading room there are tables and desks at which you can sit and read the daily papers and all the other important periodicals(期刊). In the reference library there are encyclopedias(百

科全书), dictionaries, and a lot of other books. These may not be taken away.

(205 words)



1. borrow 和 lend 用法

borrow 意思是“借进”，常与 from 连用；而 lend 意思是“借出”，常与 to 连用。如：

Can I borrow some monies from you?

I lent my ruler to Tom yesterday, but he forgot to return it to me.

2. 形容词和副词同级比较句型(I)

形容词和副词同级比较句型，基本句型为 SV as Adj. (原形)/Adv. (原形) as Pron. / N/ NP。如：

My ruler is as long as yours. (T60)

This book is not as interesting as that one. (T60)

I can run as fast as you can. (T60)

I can't run as fast as you can. (T60)

在“as Adj. (原形)/ Adv. (原形) as”结构中，前一个 as 可以省略；后一个 as 后面接代词时用主格，但非正式文体中可以用宾格。如：

He is as tall as me. (非正式)

He is as tall as I (am). (正式，规范)

3. 真实条件句

真实条件句常由 if 引导，表示假设情况可能发生，或假设条件可能出现。在真实条件句中，主句用一般将来时，条件从句谓

语动词用一般现在时形式。如：I will tell him if you go to the Great Wall tomorrow.

注意：在真实条件句中，主句不能用 be going to 表示将来，只能用 shall /will + 动词原形表将来。

注意真实条件句和虚拟条件句的区别。虚拟条件句，表示假设情况不可能发生或假设条件不可能出现。虚拟条件句也经常用 if 来引导，但要掌握：

(1) 主句用过去将来时，条件从句用过去时。如：

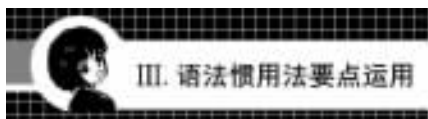
If I were you, I'd phone him now. (T19)

如果我是你，我现在会打电话给他。

(2) 主句用过去将来完成时，条件从句用过去完成时。如：

If I had been there, he would not have made such a serious mistakes. (T37)

如果我当时在那里，他应该不会犯这么严重的错误。



1. 单项填空

(1) Americans eat _____ vegetables per person today as they did in 1910. (2002 上海高考)

- A. more than twice B. as twice as many
C. twice as many as D. more than twice as many

(2) Let's keep to the point or we _____ any decisions. (2004 全国高考)

- A. will never reach B. have never reached
C. never reach D. never reached

(3) They've _____ us \$ 150,000 for the house. Shall we take it?

(2004 湖南高考)

A. provided B. supplied C. shown D. offered

(4) —Excuse me ,but I want to use your computer to type a report.

—You _____ have my computer if you don't take care of it.

(2004 湖南高考)

A. shan't B. might not

C. needn't D. shouldn't

(5) The Foreign Minister said ,“ _____ our hope that the two sides will work towards peace. ” (2004 北京高考)

A. This is B. There is C. That is D. It is

(6) Our neighbor has _____ ours. (2003 北京高考)

A. as a big house as B. as big a house as

C. the same big house as D. a house the same big as

(7) It is reported that the United States uses _____ energy as the whole of Europe. (2004 广西高考)

A. as twice B. twice much

C. twice much as D. twice as much

(8) Since you have repaired my TV set , _____ is no need for me to buy a new one. (2002 上海高考)

A. it B. there C. this D. that

2. 短文改错(1994 全国高考)

此题要求你对一段文章改错。先对每一行做出判断是对还是错。如果是对的,则在该行右边的横线上画一个勾(√);如果有错误(每行不会多于一个错误),则按情况改错如下:

如此行多一个词,则把多余的词用斜线(\)划掉,在该行右边横线上写出该词,并用斜线把该词划掉。

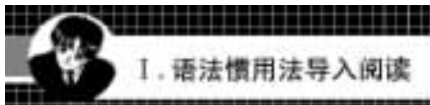
如此行缺一个词,则在缺词处加一个漏字符号(∧),并在该行右边横线上写出该加的词。

如此行错一个词，则在错的词下划一横线，并在该行右边横线上写出改正后的词。

注意：原行如无任何错误，则请勿改动。

There is public library in every town in Britain.	1	_____
There are branch library in many villages.	2	_____
Anyone may borrow books ,and it cost nothing to	3	_____
borrow them. In some places you may borrow many	4	_____
books as you want ,in other places where you	5	_____
are limited to a certain number ,of that some	6	_____
may be novels. Books may be keep for four weeks.	7	_____
Newly-published novels are always in great demand ,	8	_____
and some books ,for example ,books for history ,	9	_____
science ,cooking and gardening are also popular.	10	_____
If the book you will want is out ,you may ask for it	11	_____
to be called back for you ,and whether you pay	12	_____
the cost of send a postcard ,the librarian will	13	_____
write to you ,and let you to know when the book you	14	_____
want has returned and is ready for you to pick up.	15	_____

Unit 8



Where to Live

Chairman : Good evening. I'm Paul Parker. The topic for tonight's discussion is "Where to live?" If you could choose where to live, would you like to live in a village or in a city?

Henry : Well, I think I'd prefer to live in a village because... well, I think the people there are friendly and there is a lot of fresh air. I think life in a village generally is healthier and I like being close to nature. And it's very important for my work as a writer to have peace and quiet.

Chairman : Mary?

Mary : Well, I'd prefer to live in a city because there's more going on. Er... being an actress, I need to go to the cinema and the theater and there's far more entertainment in the city than there is in the country. Of course I also like it because... um... people are more open-minded. People don't mind what you do in the city.

Chairman : You don't think the city can be lonely?

Mary : Oh, no, no. You can... have to go out and make friends.

And. . .

Chairman : Good , fine. Now , Jenny ?

Jenny : Yes , well , I prefer living in a village. It's safer than a city and there's less crime and of course there's less traffic , so it's much more pleasant. Then it's much more cheaper than the city. There are. . . you know , rents are cheaper and so of course are house prices. It's quiet , peaceful. Yes , I much prefer living in a village.

Chairman : Jenny , good , all right. Well , thank you very much indeed. And let's find out where do you live. Henry ?

Henry : I live in London , but I don't like living there.

Chairman : Fine. Er. . . Mary ?

Mary : Oh , I live in a village because my husband is a farmer.

Chairman : I see , but you don't really like that situation.

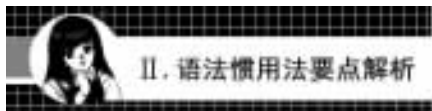
Mary : I'm afraid I don't.

Chairman : Oh , dear. Jenny ?

Jenny : Yes , well , I have the best of both worlds , I'm afraid. I live in a small town which is within easy reach of London , and it's very close to the country.

Chairman : Mm , very nice. OK , well , thank you very much.

(360 words)



1. prefer 用法

动词 prefer 表示偏好或喜好，有“宁愿(选择)”、“更喜欢”的意思。这个词用法较多，常见的有：prefer N/NP，prefer N/NP to

N/NP, prefer to V/VP, prefer V-ing/ V-ing P, 例见选文。又如：

I prefer tea. (T26)

I prefer tea to coffee. (T26)

—Which do you prefer, rice or noodles?

—I prefer noodles to rice. (T12)

I'd prefer to go by train. (T26)

I prefer walking alone.

注意：prefer to V/ VP 表示选择，to V/VP 用于尚未开始；

prefer V-ing/V-ing P 表示习惯性偏好，V-ing/V-ing P

表示已经发生或已经经常进行。

2. 动词 need 用法

need 既可用做实义动词，又可用做情态动词。need 用做情态动词时，多用于疑问句、否定句和条件句，无时态与人称变化，后面直接跟动词原形。例如：Need I do it now? need 用做实义动词时后面跟带 to 的动词不定式，例见本节选文。又如：

I need to go to the cinema and the theatre.

3. 形容词与副词差别比较

形容词和副词差别比较基本句式为：S + V + Adj. 比较级/ Adv. 比较级 + than + N/NP, 例见本节选文。又如：

Lily is younger than Kate. (T61)

The red skirt is more expensive than the yellow one. (T61)

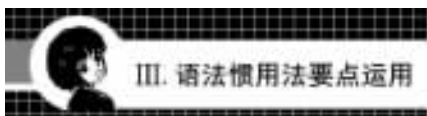
I run faster than Jim. (T61)

Mrs. Barker walks more slowly than Mr. Baker. (T61)

There be 存在句差别比较基本结构为：There be Adj. 比较级 + S + Adv. + (there be) + Adv., 例见本节选文。又如：

There is much more snow in the north than (there is) in the south.

There is less crime in the country than (there is) in the city.



1. 单项填空

(1) I have worked with him for some time and have found that he is _____ than John. (2004 上海高考)

- A. more efficiency a worker B. a more efficient worker
C. more an efficient worker D. a worker more efficiently

(2) —There's coffee and tea ; you can have _____.

—Thanks. (2003 全国高考)

- A. either B. each C. one D. it

(3) Boris has brains. In fact , I doubt whether anyone in the class has _____ IQ. (2002 全国高考)

- A. a high B. a higher
C. the higher D. the highest

(4) —Do you think the Stars will beat the Bulls ?

—Yes. They have better players , so I _____ them to win.

(1999 全国高考)

- A. hope B. prefer C. expect D. want

(5) It is generally believed that teaching is _____ it is a science.

(2001 年高考试题)

- A. an art much as B. much an art as
C. as an art much as D. as much an art as

(6) John plays football _____ , if not better than , David. (1994 年高考试题)

- A. as well B. as well as
C. so well D. so well as

2. 阅读理解(2004 全国高考)

“Tired of Working in Your Country !”

With over 500 instructors and 20 years of experience ,we are the leader in the field of teaching foreign languages. We now have positions open in Osaka starting September/October 2004 for instructors of English , German , Spanish and French.

● Teach many different kinds of classes using the latest technology in small classes of up to 3 students.

● Accommodation(住宿) , and other necessary documents(文件) will be ready before you leave.

● Applicants will teach their first language only.

● Excellent teacher training programs.

If you are young with a university degree and are willing to experience different cultures , apply (申请) now. Experience in teaching is an advantage but not specially required. Knowledge of the Japanese language is not necessary but good English skills and practical computer knowledge are basic requirements.

Apply with C. V. and send letters to :

NOVA France , Mr. Sampy (IHT3/2)

34 , Bd. Haussmann , 75009 Paris , France

Fax : 33148014804

Or visit our website : [www. teadyp. com](http://www.teadyp.com)

The manager expects to meet and talk with successful applicants in Paris in June and July.

(1) What is the purpose of the text ?

A. To introduce a language school in Japan.

B. To hire language teachers to work in Japan.

C. To describe working conditions in Japan.

D. To make clear the requirements for Japanese teachers.

(2) We know from the text that those who are going to Japan will ____.

- A. teach English only in Osaka
- B. receive a degree from a university
- C. have free accommodation
- D. get trained for the job

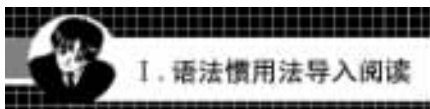
(3) Before going to Japan , you need _____.

- A. to see the manager of NOVA France
- B. to take some computer courses
- C. to write a letter to Japan
- D. to find a place to live

(4) If you want to work in Japan you should _____.

- A. have some working experience
- B. know how to use computers
- C. present good teaching plans
- D. speak several languages

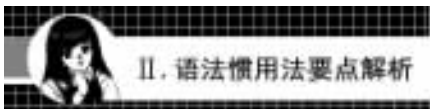
Unit 9



Watching Television

What was life like without television? Before this monster(怪物) found way to our homes, we used to enjoy civilized(文明的) pleasure, like entertaining our friends, going to theaters, movies and restaurants, or reading or listening to music or chatting at leisure. But all that belongs to the past. We are now totally controlled by this "box". No more mealtime talks are allowed. If any member of the family dares to open his mouth during a program, he is quickly silenced. Television encourages passive enjoyment and created lots of fun. However many people think TV is greatly wronged. Nobody impose(将.....强加) TV on anyone. If you don't like it, don't buy a set or turn it off. Television has made the large world into a small village. It helps make us well informed of the outside world. It makes impossible become possible, like watching a world game, listening to a great concert, enjoying the sight of famous people. And on top of that, it lends much help to education. It provides lots of programs for students in distant lands and poor areas. And it even helps us choose what to buy. Thanks to television, the whole world is much enlightened(启蒙) and the people are more intelligent. Long live television.

(206 words)



1. used to 用法

used to 表达过去经常性的或持续性的行为，或表达过去的习惯，意思是“过去常常”。它否定形式为 used not to, usedn't to, 或 didn't use to。例见本节选文。又如：

He used to lived in London.

My mother is more forgetful than she used to be.

I didn't use to like her.

Did you use to live here ?

You used to smoke much , didn't you ?

There used to be a school here , didn't there ?

注意：在特别正式与规范的文体中，不用 did use to 或 didn't use to。上面四句分别为：

I usedn't to like her.

Used you to live here ?

You used to smoke much , usedn't you ?

There used to be a school here , usedn't there ?

2. allow 和 permit 用法

allow 和 permit，都可表达“允许”的意思，两者经常互换使用，但意义有些区别。allow 语气较弱，含义较广。相比之下，permit 语气较强，一般用于比较正式的场合，有经过同意而准许或授权之意，常用于法律或规章制度文献中。如：The nurse allowed the visitors to remain beyond the hospital visiting hours, though it was not permitted. 在用法上，allow 可带宾语补足语，而 permit 不能。如：He doesn't allow his daughter out at night.

3. 动词 dare 用法

dare 表示“敢于”，既可用做实义动词，又可用做情态动词用。dare 用做情态动词，过去时为 dared，无人称变化，如：I dare not ask him. Will you do it for me? “dare”用做实义动词，总是用于 dare to V/VP 结构中，如：I dare not to go to the cinema alone. (我不敢一个人去电影院。)

dare 作情态动词，主要用于疑问句、否定句(包括 hardly, never, no one, nobody 等词构成的句子)、和 if 或 whether 引导的从句。除 I dare say 等少数惯用法外，dare 不做为情态动词用于肯定句。在肯定句中，dare 只做为实义动词出现。如：

Dare you do that all by yourself?

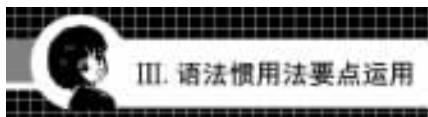
They hardly dared say one word.

Nobody dared breathe!

I wonder whether he dare speak in public.

She always dares to wear strange dresses.

He is a boy who dares to think and dares to act.



1. 短文改错(1999 全国高考)

此题要求改正所给短文中的错误。对标有题号的每一行作出判断：如无错误，在该行右边横线上画一个勾(√)；如有错误(每行只有一个错误)，则按下列情况改正：

此行多一个词：把多余的词用斜线(\)划掉，在该行右边横线上写出该词，并用斜线划掉。

此行缺一个词：在缺词处加一个漏字符号(∧)，在该行右边横线上写出该加的词。

此行错一个词：在错的词下划一横线，在该行右边横线上写出改正后的词。

注意：原行没有错的不要改。

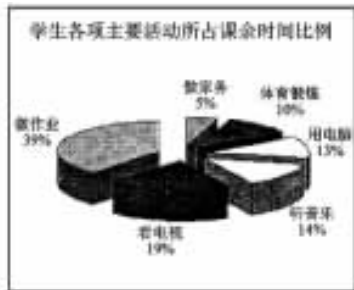
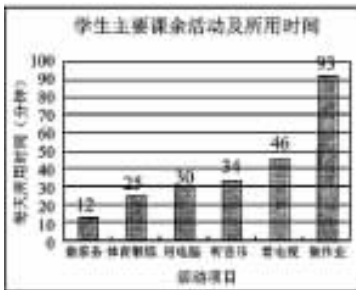
The Problem With Television

Now I can't watch much television but a few years ago 1 _____
 I was used to watch it every night. I was often 2 _____
 a little tired after a day's work and watch TV 3 _____
 demands very little effort. Unfortunate, there are 4 _____
 too many people among my family. Some wanted 5 _____
 to see the programme while others preferred 6 _____
 another. I am happy with any program me but 7 _____
 the others spent a lot time arguing and there 8 _____
 was no way of settling the matter except by 9 _____
 selling the set. Now someone at home reads instead. 10 _____

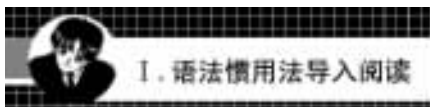
2. 情景作文(2004 北京高考)

某学校对中学生课余活动进行了调查，结果如下。请根据图表 1 提供的信息描述学生每天的课余活动，并针对图表 2 中任何一个数据中所反映的情况写出你的一个看法。词数不少于 60。

生词：图表 chart n.



Unit 10

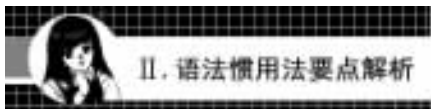


Keep a Diary or Journal

Write every day , no matter what. “ Better far write twaddle(胡言乱语) or anything , anything ,” Katherine Mansfield said , “ than nothing at all. ”

Keep everything you write. Keeping a diary is a useful way to develop a daily writing habit. It can also be a good source of ideas for future writing. But diaries and journals are not for everyone. Most people begin them with a burst of enthusiasm. For them , a better diary may be an envelope full of papers on which are caught fragments (碎片) of life , expressed in the heat language of the moment or the quiet reflection of the following morning. Some writers find they need the old-fashioned comfort of pen and paper ; others form personal attachments(依恋) to computers and printers. Computers are useful for keeping diaries and storing notes and drafts. But try not to get caught up in the world of technology ; computers , like video games , can be addictive(上瘾的). Figuring out(弄明白) the disk operating system of your computer is a waste of a writing session.

(176 words)



1. each 和 every 用法

each 与 every 都可表示“每一”、“每一个”，但两个词用法不相同。要注意几点：

(1) 在可数名词单数前面，each 指群体(至少两个)中的个别个体，强调不同；every 指群体(至少三个)中的全部个体，强调相同。另外，every 与 one, body, thing 等词构成合成词，也强调相同。

(2) every 只能用做修饰词，不可单独使用，each 既可做形容词，又可用做代词。

(3) every 不用做状语，而 each 可用作状语。

(4) every 可与数词短语并用，表示频率等，如，every two weeks 等；而 each 没有这个用法。

(5) every 与 not 连用表示部分否定。如：Every man is not honest. (并非每个人都诚实。)；each 和 not 连用表示全部否定。如：Each man is not honest. (这儿每个人都不诚实。)

(6) every one of + N 强调相同；each(one) of + N 强调不同。
例见本节选文。又如：

Each man speaks a different language.

Every child in the school speaks English.

I thought of everyone except will.

He invited everyone except George.

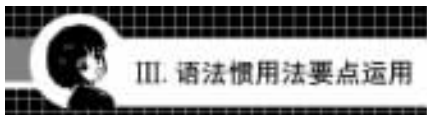
We each have a different idea.

Every man is not honest.

Each man is not honest.

Every one of the eggs is bad.

Each (one) of the house is slightly different.



1. 短文改错(2003 全国高考)

此题要求改正所给短文中的错误。对标有题号的每一行做出判断：如无错误，在该行右边横线上画一个勾(√)；如有错误(每行只有一个错误)，则按下列情况改正：

此行多一个词：把多余的词用斜线(\)划掉，在该行右边横线上写出该词，并也用斜线划掉。

此行缺一个词：在缺词处加一个漏字符号(∧)，在该行右边横线上写出该加的词。

此行错一个词：在错的词下划一横线，在该行右边横线上写出改正后的词。

注意：原行没有错的不要改。

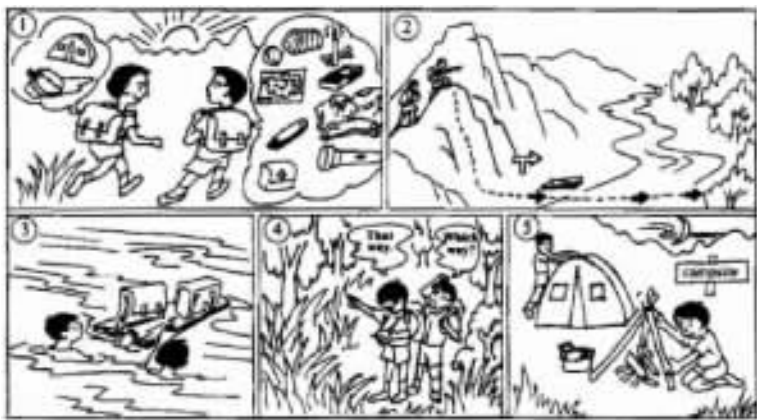
When I first learned to write in English , I ran into many
1 _____
difficulties. The main problem was in that I always thought
2 _____
in Chinese and tried to translate anything into English. 3 _____
My teacher advised me to keep my diary. I followed her 4 _____
advice and should put down 100 words or so each day. 5 _____
Soon I began to enjoy talk to myself on paper as I was 6 _____
learning to express me in simple English. One day I wrote
7 _____
a little story and showed to my teacher. She liked it 8 _____

very much and reads it to the class. All said the story was
9 _____

a good one. Their word were a great encouragement to me.
10 _____

2. 书面表达(2002 年北京高考)

你和李明参加了一次野外生存训练。以下 5 幅图画表现了野外训练活动的过程, 请根据图示写一篇英文日记。



注意: 1. 词数 100 左右。

2. 日记的开头与结尾已为你写好。

生词: 指南针 compass n.

手电筒 flashlight n.

急救包 first-aid kit

宿营地 campsite n.

Saturday, May 4, 2002

Cloudy

Li Ming and I took part in a wilderness survival program yesterday, and it has been one of the most unforgettable experiences

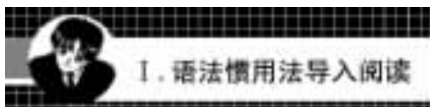
since high school.

.....

The two of us spent the night in the forest.

We learned to use knowledge gained in classroom training to solve problems. It was quite an experience for us both , which I'll never forget for the rest of my life.

Unit 11

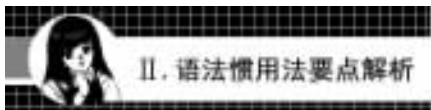


The British Way of Life—Meals

Most families have three meals a day but , if members of the family are working or studying , lunch is more likely to be eaten outside the home during the week. Breakfast , from 7 :30 to 8 :30 , may be anything from bread , butter and orange jam to a cooked meal of bacon , eggs , sausage and tomato accompanied by tea or coffee. Lunch , between 12 :00 and 14 :00 , is usually a light meal of soup , sandwiches or salad , cheese and fruit although this may be different at the weekend. Sunday lunch is often the most important meal of the week , when a cooked meal , often including a joint of meat , is served midday instead of in the evening and the whole family attends. On other days the main cooked meal is usually in the evening : either a tea when people return from work (around 18 :30) or dinner , usually eaten later at about 19 :30. In homes where a later dinner is usual the children will probably eat much earlier when they return from school. An evening meal may have a course of soup or something light ; the main course of meat or fish and vegetables followed by either a pudding(布丁) , fruit and cheese , or in the case of bread , cakes and

tea. Supper is a lighter version of dinner. Supper and dinner are usually accompanied by soft drinks, beer or wine. You may also be offered alcoholic(含酒精的) or non-alcoholic drinks before and after main meals particularly in the evening.

(245 words)



1. 不定冠词用法

不定冠词 a 置于表示频度、时间与速度等计量单位名词之前,表达“每”或“每一”之意,和数词短语连用,表示频度和价格等。例见本节选文。又如:

We have three meals a day.

I write 1000 words a day.

—How often do you go to movies?

—I go to the movies once a week. (T43)

It's £2 a gallon.

2. 集体名词用法(I)

family 是集体名词。集体名词表示整体时,谓语动词用单数;集体名词表达整体中的组成部分或各成员时,谓语动词则用复数形式。如:

His family is going to move.

My family are all fond of popular music.

《英语课程标准》词汇表中集体名词还有 audience, party, public, crew, crowd, class 和 company 等。如:

The team is at the bottom of the third division.

The team are full of enthusiasm.

3. 复合不定代词用法

复合不定代词，由 some , any , every , no 分别和 thing , body , one 等合成。它们都具有名词性质，用作单数，可以在句子中充当主语、表语或宾语。使用复合不定代词时，要注意几点：

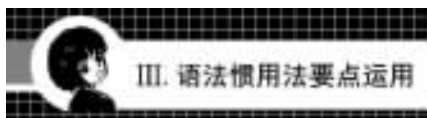
(1) 带 some 的用于肯定句，带 any 的用于否定句或疑问句。

(2) 带 body 的和带 one 的同义，但带 body 的较为口语化。

(3) 复合不定代词可以以形容词为定语，一律后置。例见本节选文。又如：

Is there anything special ?

I have something important to tell you.



1. 单项填空

(1) _____ on-going division between English-speaking Canadians and French-speaking Canadians is _____ major concern of the country. (2004 北京高考)

A. The ; 不填

B. The ; a

C. An ; the

D. An ; 不填

(2) For a long time they walked without saying _____ word. Jim was the first to break _____ silence. (2004 湖南高考)

A. the ; a

B. a ; the

C. a ; 不填

D. the ; 不填

(3) When you come here for your holiday next time , don't go to _____ hotel ; I can find you _____ bed in my flat. (2004 全国高考)

A. the ; a

B. the ; 不填

C. a ; the

D. a ; 不填

(4) As a rule , domestic servants doing odd jobs are paid _____.
(2004 上海高考)

A. by the hour

B. by hour

C. by an hour

D. by hours

(5) The sign reads “ In case of _____ fire , break the glass and push _____ red button. ” (2003 年全国高考)

A. 不填 ; a

B. 不填 ; the

C. the ; the

D. a ; a

(6) I earn 10 dollars _____ hour as _____ supermarket cashier on Saturdays. (2003 年上海高考)

A. a ... an

B. the ... a

C. an ... a

D. an ... the

(7) —It's from Mexico. Would you like _____ ? (2003 年安徽高考)

A. it

B. some

C. this

D. little

(8) Jumping out of _____ airplane at ten thousand feet is quite _____ exciting experience. (2002 全国高考)

A. 不填 ; the

B. 不填 ; a

C. an ; an

D. the ; the

(9) The cakes are delicious. He'd like to have _____ third one because _____ second one is rather too small. (2002 上海高考)

A. a ... a

B. the ... the

C. a ... the

D. the ... a

2. 完形填空 (2004 全国高考)

It was the night before the composition was due. As I looked at the list of topics (题目), “ The Art of Eating Spaghetti (意大利面条)” caught my eye. The word “ spaghetti ” brought back the 1

of an evening at Uncle Alien's in Belleville 2 all of us were seated around the table and Aunt Pat 3 spaghetti for supper. Spaghetti was an exotic (外来的) treat in 4 days. Never had I eaten spaghetti, and 5 of the grown-ups had enough experience to be 6 it. What laughing 7 we had about the 8 respectable method for moving spaghetti from plate to mouth. 9, I wanted to write about that, but I wanted to 10 it down simply for my own 11, not for Mr. Fleagle, my composition teacher. 12, I would write something else.

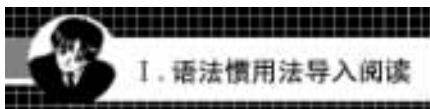
When I finished it the night was half gone and there was no 13 left to write a proper composition for Mr. Fleagle. There was no choice next morning but to 14 my work. Two days passed before Mr. Fleagle returned the 15 papers. He said, "Now, class, I want to read you a composition, 'The Art of Eating Spaghetti.'"

My words! He was reading my words out 16 to the whole class. 17 laughed, then the whole class was laughing with open-hearted enjoyment. I did my best not to show 18, but what I was feeling was pure happiness, 19 my words had the power to make people 20.

- (1) A. memory B. thought
C. knowledge D. experience
- (2) A. when B. where C. since D. after
- (3) A. cooked B. served C. got D. made
- (4) A. their B. past C. last D. those
- (5) A. none B. one C. earns D. neither
- (6) A. careful about B. good at
C. fond of D. interested in

- (7) A. speeches
C. sayings
- (8) A. nearly
C. officially
- (9) A. Especially
C. Suddenly
- (10) A. settle B. put C. Bite D. let
- (11) A. work B. story C. luck D. joy
- (12) A. However
C. As for him
- (13) A. time B. excuse C. way D. idea
- (14) A. give up B. continue C. hand in D. delay
- (15) A. written B. graded C. collected D. calmly
- (16) A. laid B. fast C. publicly D. calmly
- (17) A. People B. Nobody C. Somebody D. I
- (18) A. shock
C. worry
- (19) A. if B. for C. while D. although
- (20) A. excited B. satisfied C. think D. laugh
- B. lessons
D. arguments
B. naturally
D. socially
B. Probably
D. Fortunately
B. Therefore
D. Except for that
B. wonder
D. pleasure

Unit 12



Dictionary

A dictionary is always a useful tool for learning a language. So , for today's lecture , I'd like , first of all , to talk briefly about the importance of a dictionary. Most dictionaries will tell you a number of things about a language. There are three things in particular that are important. These things are spelling , pronunciation , and meanings.

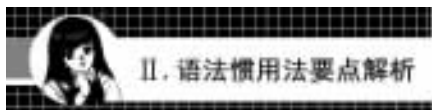
The first and most obvious thing that a dictionary will tell you is the spelling of a word. If you are not sure about the spelling of a word , you can try to find the correct spelling in a dictionary. Words are listed in alphabetical order(按字母顺序)-a , b , c and so on. For example , on a dictionary page the word “ poor ” comes before “ poverty ”.

The second thing a dictionary will tell you is pronunciation. Most dictionaries give the importance of a word in a special kind of alphabet. This special alphabet is called a phonetic. The phonetic spelling will tell you how a word is pronounced. There are a few different phonetic alphabets. Many dictionaries use the International Phonetic Alphabet(国际音标) to show pronunciation.

The third thing a dictionary will tell you is the meaning of words. You can look up a word to find out what it means. Many words have more than one meaning , and a good dictionary will explain all of the word's meanings.

These three things—spelling, pronunciation, and meaning—are some of the important facts that you learn from dictionaries. And I hope that a dictionary will become a good and useful company in your language learning.

(259 words)



1. 主谓一致与 a number of 用法

a number of 意思相当于 some, 置于复数名词前, 谓语动词用复数形式。如:

A number of well-qualified people have recently left the company.

A number of books have been published on the subject of the Internet.

2. try to V/VP 和 try V-ing/ V-ing P 用法

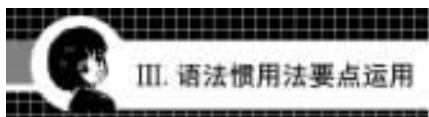
try to V/VP 表示努力或尽量做成某事, 或试图做成某事; try V-ing/ V-ing P 表示尝试着做某事, 或试验做某事以看结果或效果。例见本节选文。又如:

I tried to be here on time.

I tried hard not to laugh, but I couldn't help it.

Try phoning his home number and see if he is at home.

I tried gardening but I didn't succeed.



1. 阅读理解(2004 上海高考)

Daniel Brown was just five years old when he climbed into the

family car and let it roll away down the road. He was only three when he flooded the kitchen.

His mother , Angela Brown , is in despair. She is very busy looking after her new baby , a little girl called Laura , as well as Daniel. She told us , “ Daniel is so full of curiosity. ” At that moment , we hear a huge crash and then silence. We go upstairs and find Daniel crawling out of a wardrobe (衣櫥). He has pulled over onto the floor , with a book in his hand. “ It’s for you , Mum , ” he says and looks up at his mum and smiles. Seven-year-old Daniel has a lovely face. He has golden hair , big brown eyes , and a friendly smile. I have to admit that Daniel doesn’t look like a naughty boy.

Angela told me all about it. “ Once I found him as he was about to put Jasper in the washing machine. ” Jasper , she explained , is the Browns’ dog. “ When I asked him why , he said that he thought Jasper was dirty ! It’s amazing how one little boy can cause so much trouble. Another time he cut off all the hair of the little girl next door. She was going to attend her sister’s wedding and the neighbours haven’t spoken to us since. ”

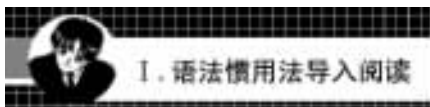
Angela told me about Daniel’s most expensive crime. “ I was about to do the washing up when the baby started crying. Daniel decided to help and filled the kitchen sink with water. When I came in , the water was already flooding the kitchen and was about to flood the hall. The carpet was ruined and had to be replaced. I hope things will get better as he gets older. ”

Amazingly , Daniel is quite well behaved in school. This may be because he is rarely bored. Meanwhile he continues to be the naughtiest little boy in England. Will his baby sister Laura grow up to be the naughtiest little girl ?

- (1) What did Daniel do while his mother was talking to the author?
- He drove away the family car.
 - He cut off the hair of the girl next door.
 - He flooded the kitchen.
 - He fell to the floor with the wardrobe.
- (2) Why was Daniel going to put the dog in the washing machine?
- He meant to clean the dog.
 - He wanted to punish the dog.
 - He intended to make trouble.
 - He wished to draw his mother's attention.
- (3) It can be inferred from the passage that _____
- the mother spoiled the boy
 - the boy found school life interesting
 - the mother lost hope in the boy
 - the boy had no freedom at home
2. 简要描述图片，并谈谈你对学生在业余时间参加过多的补习和培训的看法。(2004 上海春季高考)



Unit 13



A Welcome Speech

A big welcome ,everyone ,from all of us at the Bond School on this first day of your course. We hope you'll enjoy your time in England and learn a lot of English at the same time. I'm Mary Greeble ,the Principal(校长) of the school , and I'm going to tell you which room to go and then we'll give you a short test to get an idea of your English level.

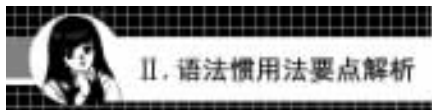
If you open your folders(文件夹) the first thing you'll see is a plan of the school. Has everyone found it? I'll give you direction to your rooms and we can use that as a chance to practice your listening and get used to doing everything in English. So see if you can follow my instruction and find your way to your rooms yourselves. But-of course-if you're not sure where to go , do ask ! Right : we are in the Assemble Hall which is the large room at the top of the plan on the right-it's marked with a cross. Those of you specialize in English for Business should go to Room 4. Go out of this room through the small area for hanging coats and turn right into the corridor(走廊) and down a few steps into the lobby between the Main and New

buildings. Go through the door on your left into the new building and then into Room 4 which is on the second floor on the left.

If you are doing the English Literature option(选择), go out into the corridor but follow it in the opposite direction. Walk past some stairs on your left and you'll see Room 9, your classroom, immediately in front of you just where the corridor turns right. If you get lost, please don't be afraid to ask for help. Remember that Business is in Room 4 and Literature in Room 9.

I'll leave you now to go to your classroom and will see you later today to tell you more about your course and the school. So the best luck with your studies and I'm sure that your stay in England will be both enjoyable and rewarding.

(357 words)



1. 反身代词用法

反身代词,英语原文是 reflective pronoun,而 reflective 意为“反射”、“反映”或“折回”。反身代词,在多数情况下,反映或反射谓语动词的发出者或接受者。反身代词有人称和数的变化,第三人称单数有性的变化。因此,反身代词在句中通常做宾语、表语、主语或宾语同位语,其形式如下表:

人称 数	第一人称	第二人称	第三人称
单 数	myself	yourself	himself, herself, itself
复 数	ourselves	yourselves	themselves

如 : Enjoy yourself. (T8)

I can't express myself in English.

I can't make myself understood.

I am not quite myself today.

As I soon learnt , he was English himself.

反身代词主要有两种用法,即非强调性用法和强调性用法。做宾语时,反身代词通常是非强调性用法。表示强调的反身代词在句中位置也比较灵活,但通常重读。如 : I did that myself.

反身代词与某些介词搭配时,可表示特殊意义。如 :

He lives by himself. (= alone)

He did it all by himself. (= without help)

This machine will work by itself. (= automatically)

The enemy will not perish of himself. (= of his own will)

This matter is between ourselves. (= without anyone else knowing)

2. in front of 与 in the front of 区别

in front of 与 in the front of 有区别。in front of 是短语介词,意思是“在……前面”,指在某范围以外的前面。如 : I sit in front of him. in the front of 不是固定短语,意思是“在……前部”,表示在某范围以内的前部。如 : I sit in the front of the class.

3. be afraid to V/VP 和 be afraid of 用法

be afraid to V/VP 与 be afraid of 有区别。be afraid to V/VP 的意思是“不敢(去)做某事”,指因为主观原因(如 : 胆怯)不敢去做某事。如 : If you get lost , please don't be afraid to ask for help. be afraid of N/NP 意思是“害怕”,指害怕做某事及它引起的后果。如 : She is afraid of dogs. be afraid of V-ing/ V-ing P 意思是“害怕”、“担心”,指担心或害怕出现某种不希望出现的状况或结果。如 :

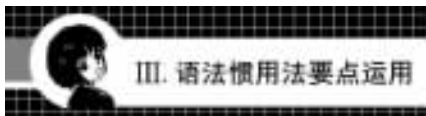
She was afraid to step further in grass because she was afraid of being bitten by a snake.

He is always afraid of losing money.

另外, be afraid that 从句, 意思也是“害怕”、“担心”, 指担心或害怕出现某种不希望的状况或结果。如:

I am afraid that it will rain.

He is afraid that he might lose his money.



1. 翻译

(1) 我们盼望能参加下星期举行的艺术节开幕式。(look forward to)(2004 上海高考)

(2) 多参加些体育锻炼, 你就不那么容易感冒了。(If...)(2004 上海高考)

(3) 因为缺少实践, 他没有通过驾驶考试。(The reason why)(2004 上海高考)

(4) 直到被送入手术间时, 他才明白遵守交通规则的重要性。(not...until...)(2004 上海高考)

(5) 虽然她孤身一人, 无亲无故, 但邻居们都向她伸出了援助之手。(offer)(2004 上海高考)

(6) 这个事故使我们意识到安全问题不容忽视。(realize)(2002 上海春季高考)

(7) 不管天有多晚, 他从不把今天的事拖到明天。(put off)(2002 上海春季高考)

(8) 许多外国游客都想去长城一游, 他们知道“不到长城非好汉”。(visit)(2002 上海春季高考)

2. 完形填空(2003 全国高考)

I played a racquetball game against my cousin Ed last week. It was one of the most 1 and tiring games I've ever had. When Ed first phoned and 2 we play, I laughed quietly, figuring on an 3 victory. After all, Ed's idea of 4 has always been nothing more 5 than lifting a fork to his mouth. 6 I can remember, Ed's been the least physically fit member in the family. and 7 proud of himself. His big stomach has always ballooned out between his T-shirt and trousers. Although the family often 8 about that. I'd refused to buy a 9 T-shirt or to lose weight. So when Ed 10 for our game not only with the bottom of his shirt gathered inside his trousers but also with a stomach you could hardly 11. I was so surprised that I was 12. My cousin must have made an effort to get himself into shape. 13, at the point in our game when I'd have predicted(预计) the score to be about 9 to 1 in my favor, it was 14 7 to 9 — and Ed was 15. The sudden realization was painful. We 16 to play like two mad men. When the score was up. I was having serious 17 about staying alive until 21 years old. Let alone 18 that many points. When the game finally ended, both of us were lying flat on our backs, too tired to 19. In a way, I think we both won: I the game, but cousin Ed my 20.

(1) A. encouraging

C. surprising

(2) A. declared

C. persuaded

(3) A. unforgettable

C. easy

B. hopeless

D. regular

B. mentioned

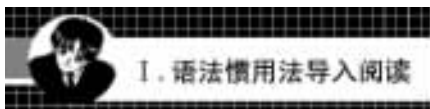
D. suggested

B. unexpected

D. early

- (4) A. exercise
C. joy
- (5) A. time-saving
C. suitable
- (6) A. As soon as
C. When
- (7) A. strangely B. personally C. reasonably D. eagerly
- (8) A. cared B. forgot C. quarreled D. joked
- (9) A. clean B. larger C. straight D. darker
- (10) A. set out
C. arrived
- (11) A. notice
C. believe
- (12) A. nervous
C. careless
- (13) A. After all B. As a result C. Above all D. At last
- (14) A. mistakenly
C. instead
- (15) A. leading
C. waiting
- (16) A. pretended B. stopped C. continued D. decided
- (17) A. thoughts
C. situations
- (18) A. scoring B. completing C. receiving D. keeping
- (19) A. play B. start C. sleep D. move
- (20) A. friendship B. respect C. support D. favor
- B. preparation
D. fitness
B. comfortable
D. effort-making
B. As long as
D. Since
B. got ready
D. returned
B. admire
D. measure
B. curious
D. speechless
B. then
D. naturally
B. coming
D. counting
B. doubts
D. problems
B. favor

Unit 14



A Return to the Middle School

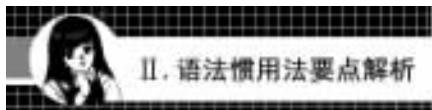
After an absence of thirty years ,I decided to visit my old school again. I had expected to find changes ,but not a completely different building.

I was pleased to find that it was break-time and that the children were all in the playground. On entering the building ,I was surprised to hear loud laughter coming from what appeared to be the master's room. I could not help remembering the teachers in my time , all dressed in black suits and high collars. And above all ,I recalled Mr. Garston ,the headmaster ,who had imposed(强加) iron discipline on staff(全体教职员工) and pupils alike. I knocked at the room door and was welcomed by a smiling young man who introduced himself to me as the headmaster. He was dressed casually in a sports jacket ,and his cheerful manner quickly driven away the image of “ Mr. Garston ”. After I had explained who I was ,the headmaster presented me to the teachers ,and said he would take me round the school.

Here the biggest surprise of all was in store for me. Gone were the heavy desks with their deeply-carved marks ;gone ,too ,were the gloomy(灰暗的) classrooms with their dark-brown walls ,and their

raised platforms for the teachers. The rooms now were happily painted in contrasting colours , and the children , far from sitting straight in their places , seemed almost free to do as they liked. I looked at them with envy as I remembered how , as a child , I had gazed at the blackboard , barely daring to whisper to my neighbour.

(256 words)



1. 过去完成时用法

过去完成时由“had + 过去分词”构成。过去完成时基本用法是表示在过去某一时刻或某一动作之前已经完成的动作或已经呈现的状态。如：By the end of last year we had built many new houses. 过去完成时还表示过去某一时刻之前发生的动作或呈现的状态一直持续到过去某时刻或将继续下去。如：By the middle of last month I had lived in Beijing for ten years.

意向动词，如 hope , wish , expect , think , intend , mean , suppose 等，用过去完成时表示“原本希望”。例如：I had expected to find changes , but not a completely different building.

2. 以-ing 和-ed 为词尾的词用法

有些词干可以加-ing 和-ed 结尾，构成做形容词用的分词，如，interesting/ interested , surprising/ surprised , exciting/ excited , moving/ moved , tiring /tired 等。它们在句中做表语、定语或补语，意义有区别。-ing 分词通常表示主动属性或正在进行状态，-ed分词通常表示被动属性或已完成状态。如：

I heard loud laughter coming from the master's room. (我听见朗朗的笑声从校长室传出。)

I saw a gun pointed at the girl. (我看见有人用枪指着女孩。)

It was a moving film, and many of us were moved to tears. (这部影片很感人,许多人被感动得热泪盈眶。)

I was surprised to find him caught in the rain. (我惊奇地发现,他淋雨了。)

3. can/ could (not) help 用法

can/ could (not) help, 表达(不能抑制、防止、或避免)某事,意思为“不得不”、“情不自禁”等。这一表达法常见结构有: can/ could (not) help N/NP; can/ could (not) help Pron.; can/ could (not) help V-ing/ V-ing P. 例见本节选文。又如:

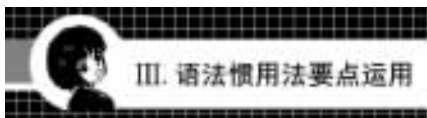
She burst out laughing; she couldn't help it.

I couldn't help it; it was an impulse.

He couldn't help thinking of his boyhood days.

4. 主谓倒装

如果句子主语太长,可全部倒装。The heavy desks with their deeply-carved marks were gone; the gloomy classrooms with their dark-brown walls, and their raised platforms for the teachers were gone, too. 此句头长脚短,倒装形式如本节选文。



1. 单项填空

(1) He kept looking at her, wondering whether he _____ her somewhere. (2004 湖北高考)

A. saw

B. has seen

C. sees

D. had seen

(2) It is believed that if a book is _____, it will surely _____ the

reader. (2003 上海高考)

- A. interested , interest B. interesting , be interested
C. interested , be interesting D. interesting , interest

(3) —I hear Jane has gone to the Holy Island for her holiday.

—Oh , how nice ! Do you know when she __ ? (2004 湖南高考)

- A. was leaving B. had left C. has left D. left

(4) Sarah , hurry up. I'm afraid you can't have time to _____ before the party. (2004 全国高考)

- A. get changed B. get change
C. get changing D. get to change

(5) Mr. Smith , _____ of the _____ speech , started to read a novel. (2003 北京高考)

- A. tired ; boring B. tiring ; bored
C. tired ; bored D. tiring ; boring

(6) The teacher , with 6 girls and 8 boys of her class , _____ visiting the museum when the earthquake struck. (2004 北京高考)

- A. was B. were C. had been D. would be

2. 根据对话内容,从对话后的选项中选出能填入空白处的最佳选项,选项中有两项为多余选项。(1999 全国高考)

John : Oh. hi , Fred ! 1 Why are you so late ?

Sled : 2 She always keeps us in class until ten past ten.

John : Doesn't she know that you're supposed to get out at ten.

Sled : 3 But she never look at her watch. She just keeps talking.

John : Don't the students complain (抱怨) about it ? 4

Sled : No , 5 .

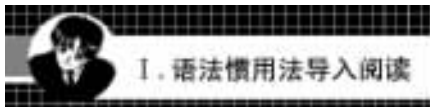
John : Well , you could try and talk to her.

Fred : Maybe.

A. They don't think so

- B. I didn't know whether to save you a place or not
- C. Everybody is too polite
- D. I guess so
- E. Mary had a talk with me.
- F. It's our maths teacher.
- G. I would say something

Unit 15

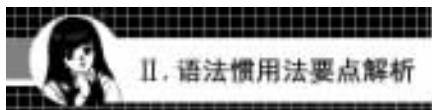


Fishing with My Father

On an exciting summer day in mid-July in the middle of Sabago Lake my father helped me reel(卷线) in my very first catch. At first , everything was quiet around us. There were no human voices , cars , or planes to break the silence of the still pond. It was a perfect day for fishing. The sky was a brighter blue than usual , and white clouds raced overhead. We sat quietly , afraid to talk , thinking that the fish would hear us and would stay away. As we sat there , my father holding his pole in his hand , passed me some lunch. With my mouth filled with peanut butter , I said :“ When do you think the fish will bite ? We’ve been in this boat forever. ” It was terribly hot , for the sun hung directly over us , and the mosquitoes had told me hours ago that they favored my blood the best. “ These things are eating me alive ,” I complained to my father. Suddenly my line tightened and my sinker moved. “ Dad , it moved ; what do I do now ?” My father , now as excited as I was , come to my side of boat. Everything rocked. Little circles with white bubbles(水泡) formed on the water. Dad took the rod(杆子) from me and , grasping it firmly like a champion fisherman , pulled and reeled the line in. “ First , you pull it a little to

let it know who is a boss ,” he explained excitedly. “ Then you bring it in gradually. ” In complete control of the pole he reeled the line. Finally , a six-inch silvery blue perch(河鲈) sailed though the air , swing on my line. I picked the perch up , plopped(泼) the struggling body some water. The fish regained consciousness(知觉). I thought it knew that it would be a part of our dinner that night.

(300 words)



1. with 复合结构用法

with 复合结构,指的是 with N/NP V-ing/ V-ing P ;with N/ NP V-ed/ V-ed P ;with N/NP Adj. / Adj. P ;with N/NP PP ;with N/NP to V/VP 等。例见本节选文。又如:

With all these things to do ,I don't know if I'll have time to go out.

With five people away on business ,we'll have to close the office this afternoon.

2. 表语形容词用法(I)

大多数形容词既可用作定语,又可用做表语。部分形容词不能用做定语,只能用做表语或宾语补足语。本节选文中 alive 便是。表语形容词,它没有级的变化,也不可用程度副词修饰。除 alive 外,《英语课程标准》词汇表中还有 afraid , alone , ashamed , asleep , awake , unable 等。例见本节选文。又如:

He is always alone in the house.

He felt too ashamed to ask for help.

She felt asleep during the day.

这些词中,有的偶尔可以作后置定语。如:

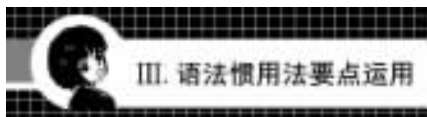
He is the wisest man alive .

3. 形容词与副词同级比较句型(II)

形容词与副词同级比较基本句型的“ as Adj. (原形)/Adv. (原形) as ”结构中,“ Adj. (原形)/Adv(原形) ”可以扩展。有两种常见扩展结构 :

(1)“ as +Adj. (原形) + a + N(单数) + as ”。如 : This is as good an example as the other is.

(2)“ as + many/much + N(不可数) + as ”。如 : I can carry as much paper as you can.



1. 短文改错(1998 全国高考)

此题要求改正所给短文中的错误。对标有题号的每一行作出判断 : 如果无错误, 在该行右边横线上画一个勾(√); 如有错误(每行只有一个错误), 则按下列情况改正 :

此行多一个词 : 把多余的词用斜线(\)划掉, 在该行右边横线上出该词, 并也用斜线划掉。

此行缺一个词 : 在缺词处加一个漏字符号(^), 在该行右边横线上写出该加的词。

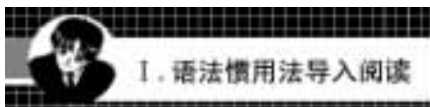
此行错一个词 : 在错的词下划一横线, 在该行右边横线上写出该加的词。注意 : 原行没有错的不要改。

My Favorite Sport

My favorite sport is football. I was a member of 1 _____
our school football team. We practice for three times 2 _____
every week and often watch football match on TV 3 _____
together. Play football not only makes us grow up 4 _____

tall and strong but also give us a sense of fair play and 5 _____
team spirit. We must keep in mind that we play 6 _____
for the team instead ourselves. Also , the sport 7 _____
teaches us the important of obedience(服从). Each 8 _____
player must obey captain , who is the leader of 9 _____
the team. And they must not break the rules too 10 _____
often if we want to win the game.

Unit 16



Computer Games

To most people , the term “ computer game ” brings images (印象) of mass destruction (破坏) and mindless violence. But , this is true only to some games. Many games , such as The Sims , have no violence at all. As for the rest , “ mindful violence ” might be a better term.

Silly argument No 1 : “ Computer games damage your eyes. ”

This is totally untrue. People’s eyes hurt far more after a long period reading a book than they do after playing on the computer. When you play on the computer , your eyes are always round the screen , searching for enemies , treasure and so on.

Silly argument No 2 : “ Computer games are not educational. ”

In fact , some computer games do turn out to be educational : for example , Civilization II , in which players create a civilization form , building cities and discovering new technologies.

Despite this large element to the game , it also servers as a remarkably good history lesson.

Silly argument No 3 : “ Computer games are antisocial (不合群)

的)。”

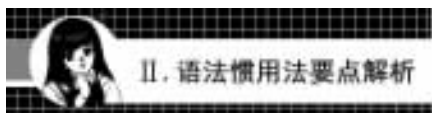
Again, this is untrue. Usually groups of friends play the same sorts of games, and that is one of the things that has brought them together.

Silly argument No 4: “Computer games encourage violent (暴力) behaviour.”

The fact is that there is no evidence to show that a computer fan becomes a murderer.

If you are reading a book, you may understand a character. With computer games, you decide what happens, and you are the character. Just for a few hours, you can be someone else.

(244 words)



1. no 用法

no 是一个简单词，但用法并不很简单。《英语课程标准》词汇表 no 条列有副词和形容词两种词性。做副词，主要是用在形容词或副词比较级前，意义相当于 not。如：

You look no older than thirty.

This book is no cheaper than that one.

作形容词，意思是 not any, not one, not a, 只能用做定语，可以修饰可数名词或不可数名词，例见本节选文。又如：

There were no letters for you today.

I have no time at all to write to you.

I have no idea.

要注意以下几点：

(1) no 和 not 的区别：

The students went on strike ,but not the teachers.

The students went on strike ,but no the teachers. (×) (常见错误。no 只能作定语。)

Many students went on strike ,but no teachers.

Many students went on strike ,but not teachers. (×) (not 为副词，不作定语。)

(2) 习惯表达法或固定短语用法：no good , no use , no more , not any more , no longer , not any longer 等。如：

I'm no good at table tennis.

It is no use crying over spilt milk.

He can not close his eyes to that any longer.

He can no longer close his eyes to that.

(3) no V-ing/ V-ing P 结构。如：

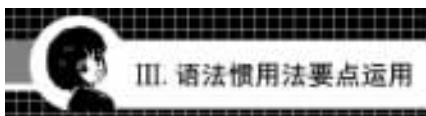
No smoking. (T. 18)

No spitting. (T. 18)

Sorry , these is no smoking in the classroom.

2. find 与 discover 用法

find 与 discover 都表示偶然的与意外的发现，在一般场合两者可以互换。两个词有差别，首先，find 较不正式，discover 较为正式；其次，find 既可指对某种新事物的寻求，也可指对以前已有、但后来丢失的某种事物的发现。如：He finally found the missing keys in a jacket he had put in storage for the summer. 其三，在表示获得某种已经存在但新近才发现的事物，特别是指科学上的新发现时，只能用 discover。如：Who discovered electricity? (谁发现了电?)



1. 单项填空

- (1) It was only with the help of the local guide _____. (2004 上海高考)
- A. was the mountain climber rescued
B. that the mountain climber was rescued
C. when the mountain climber was rescued
D. then the mountain climber was rescued
- (2) _____ two exams to worry about, I have to work really hard this weekend. (2004 北京高考)
- A. With
B. Besides
C. As for
D. Because of
- (3) — What do you want _____ those old boxes?
— To put things in when I move to the new flat. (2002 北京高考)
- A. by
B. for
C. of
D. with
- (4) No one in the department but Tom and I _____ that the director is going to resign. (2004 上海高考)
- A. knows
B. know
C. have known
D. am to know
- (5) — I think you should phone Jenny and say sorry to her.
— _____. It was her fault. (2003 全国高考)
- A. No way
B. Not possible
C. No chance
D. Not at all
- (6) A cook will be immediately fired if he is found _____ in the kitchen. (2003 全国高考)

A. smoke B. smoking C. to smoke D. smoked

(7) It is well known that Thomas Edison _____ the electric lamp.

(1989 全国高考)

A. invented

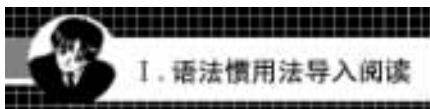
B. discovered

C. found

D. developed

2. 本文就人们对电子游戏罗列的四条罪状逐一进行了批驳，你是否赞成本文的观点，为什么？建议举办一次班级辩论赛，对电游的利弊展开讨论。

Unit 17



The Year of the Women

—Live Reports form Grammy Awards(葛莱美奖)

Todd Newton : Hi everybody , welcome to the sound of the Grammys ! I'm Todd Newton. Well , after two long years the Grammys are finally back here in Los Angeles , and we gather here to see who's gonna grab (获得) the glory at Grammy's 41st annual (年度的) award show. So I had to come to get the lovely Monica to join me in my co-hosting duties today. First of all , thank you for being here with us.

Monica : You're welcome.

Todd Newton : This gonna be fun ! And congratulations on those Grammy nominations.

Monica : Well thanks , Todd ! You know , it's been an unbelievable year , and I most honored to be part of the Grammy Awards that everyone is calling “ the year of the woman ”. . . Now never in Grammy history had the categories (种类) been so dominated (支配) by women. Hey , you know what , Todd ?

Todd Newton : What ?

Monica : It is about the time !

Todd Newton : I'm with you there !

Todd Newton : Twenty three year old Lauren Hill is already the owner of two Grammys with her group , The Fugues. But her solo album (个人单碟) , The Miseducation of Lauren Hill , swept the nominations (提名) this year with ten , including “ Best Pop ” and “ R&B ”. Madonna's Ray of Light will battle Hill. The females made fierce competition for the males this year , eight of the ten nominations for best album and record of the year went to the girls.

Monica : That's right. Known fact , Lauren Hill her name was heard on nomination more than any other nominee.

MC1 : Lauren Hill , for Nothing even Matters.

MC2 : Lauren Hill , for Lost Ones.

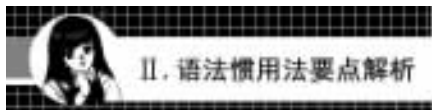
MC3 : For the best new artist , Lauren Hill.

MC4 : Lauren Hill , for The Malediction of Lauren Hill.

Lauren Hill : What's up , everybody ?

Todd Newton : More than just the year of the woman , 1998 may prove to be the year of a woman , Lauren Hill.

(308 words)



1. 否定性副词与形容词用法

英语中有一批否定性副词与形容词以及由它们构成的否定性短语与习惯搭配，《英语课程标准》中包括的有：never , seldom , neither , nor , not , hardly , few , little , not only... but (also) , no sooner... than , hardly... when , not until 等。例见本节选文。又

如：

Seldom had I seen such a film.

Never in the south have I seen snow.

注意几点：

(1) 这些词、短语和习惯搭配置于句首时，句子采用倒装。

(2) Not only... but also... 置于两个分句之首时，仅第一个分句用倒装结构；Not only... but also... 置于句首连接两个并列词语，不可用倒装结构。如：

Not only you but also I am fond of music.

Not only did he refuse the gift, he also severely criticized the sender.

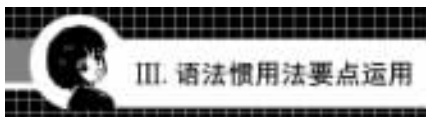
2. prove 用法

prove 一词意义简单，但用法并不简单，常见如下：

(1) prove + N/NP (+ to N/NP)。如：In order to prove her point, she showed them the latest sales figures.

(2) prove + (to N/NP) + that 从句。如：The fingerprints on the gun prove conclusively that she was the murderer.

(3) prove + N/NP + N/NP/Adj./Adj. P。如：He prove himself an amusing companion.



1. 单项填空

(1) —I would never ever come to this restaurant again. The food is terrible!

—_____ . (2004 广西高考)

A. Nor am I

B. Neither would I

C. Same with me D. So do I

(2) I must be getting fat. I can _____ do my trousers up. (2004 四川高考)

A. fairly B. hardly C. nearly D. seldom

(3) There's _____ cooking oil left in the house. Would you go to the corner store and get _____ ?(2004 北京高考)

A. little ;some B. little ;any
C. a little ;some D. a little ;any

(4) Not only _____ interested in football but _____ beginning to show an interest in it. (2002 上海高考)

A. the teacher himself is. . . all his students are
B. the teacher himself is. . . are all his students
C. is the teacher himself. . . are all his students
D. is the teacher himself. . . all his students are

(5) Although he has taken a lot of medicine , his health _____ poor. (2002 上海高考)

A. proves B. remains
C. maintains D. continues

2. 根据对话内容,从对话后的选项中选出能填入空白处的最佳选项,选项中有两项为多余选项。(2000 全国高考)

Mrs. Brown :What a tiring evening !

Mr. Brown :Oh ,it's good to sit down after all that standing.

Mrs. Brown : 1

Mr. Brown :I don't think I've ever felt so tired in my life 2

Mrs. Brown :And the heat. 3

Mr. Brown :We shouldn't have accepted the invitation in the first place.

Mrs. Brown : 4 we've only been to a party.

Mr. Brown : You're right. We must be getting old.

Mrs. Brown : Come on. 5 We'd feel better.

A. I'm not that tired.

B. Let's have some coffee.

C. What's more , I didn't sleep well last night.

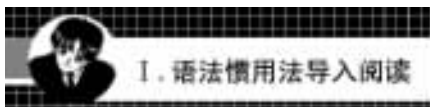
D. But we shouldn't have felt so tired.

E. A good night's sleep will put you right again.

F. I could just sit here for ever and ever , and never get up.

G. All that silly talk , and the drink and the cigarette smoke.

Unit 18



Homesickness

Only a person far away from home knows what homesickness(乡愁) is.

It is the tears in your eyes , the lump in your throat , the waving hands when the train is drawing out of station and taking you away from home. It is the strength with which you walk the three miles to your home with heavy bags in your hands after a long tiring trip , and the excitement at the doorstep.

It is the impatience(不耐烦) , anxiety , fear , and wild guesses when you are waiting for a letter from home. It is the never fading(褪色) joy of reading it again and again in bed.

It is the unusual patience with which you go to the ticket office at midnight and stand in a long line before the small window , and the ecstasy(狂喜) when you at last get a ticket at ten o'clock the next morning.

It is the sudden delight of closeness that strikes you when you meet a person from the same town , or even a stranger who has just been there. It is the eagerness to ask about everything , the trees , the

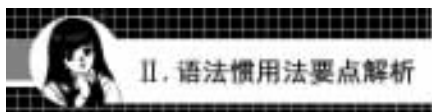
hills , and your dear old folks. It is the sparkling(闪烁的) eyes when you come upon a few words about your hometown in the corner of a newspaper.

It is the fear to sing “Home , Sweet Home ” in case of a burst of tears. It is the murmur of “ Mummy ” in the dreams. It is the mother’s smile that keeps on appearing in your dreams.

It is the silent sigh and faint pain in your heart when you begin reading the story , “ That spring forty years ago , I waved farewell to my village and my dear mother. ”

So warm a word is home , and such a sweet sadness is the homesickness.

(296 words)



1. it 为引导词的强调句型

英语中表示强调的方式有多种,以 it 为引导词的强调句型是常见的一种。它的结构是:It + be(有时态变化) + 被强调部分 + that 从句。例见本节选文。这种结构可以强调除谓语动词以外的大多数句子成分。如:It was not until I had read your letter that I understood the true state of affairs. 如果被强调的部分是人,that 可用 who , whom 代替。如:It is Professor Wang who teaches us English every Monday afternoon.

2. such 与 so 强调用法

such 与 so 都可以表示强调,但两者句法结构差异较大。such 表示强调时,常见结构有:such + N (不可数);such a/an + N (可数单数);such + N (可数复数)。如:

We had such fun.

She is such a fool.

They are such fools.

在 such 强调结构中，名词之前都可以加形容词修饰语，例见本节选文。又如：

He is such a great man.

She is such a big fool.

They are such big fools.

so 表示强调时，常见结构有：so + Adj. ; so + Adj. + a/an + N. 例见本节选文。又如：

She is so stupid.

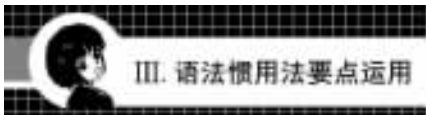
She is so stupid a fool.

注意：such 和 so 强调结构不同，不能混用。以下句子，都是典型错误句子。

I am happy to see your so beautiful house. (×)

I have never seen a so beautiful house. (×)

I have never seen such beautiful a house. (×)



1. 单项填空

(1) It is these poisonous products ____ can cause the symptoms of the flu, such as headache and aching muscles. (2003 上海高考)

A. who B. that C. how D. what

(2) We were in _____ when we left that we forgot the airline tickets. (2003 上海高考)

A. a rush so anxious B. a such anxious rush

C. so an anxious rush D. such an anxious rush

(3) Can you believe that in _____ a rich country there should be _____ many poor people? (1995 全国高考)

A. such ; such B. such ; so

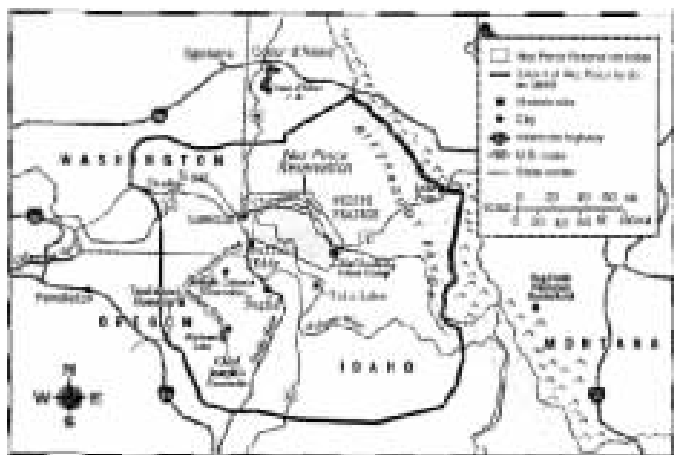
C. so ; so D. so ; such

(4) It was not until 1920 _____ regular radio broadcasts began. (1995 全国高考)

A. while B. which C. that D. since

2. 阅读理解(2004 北京高考)

The Home of My People



When Lewis and Clark stepped onto the Weippe Prairie in present-day Idaho in September 1805, they met the Nez Perce Indians. In the following years, the white explorers(探险者) began to fight with the Indians for their land. Some Nez Perce chiefs signed agreements with the U. S. government, selling part of their lands.

But the government always broke those agreements and demanded more land.

Other chiefs refused to go along with the government's plans. The most famous was Chief Joseph , whose people lived in the Wallowa Valley(present-day Oregon).

“In order to have all people understand how much land we owned ,” he once explained , “my father planted poles around it and said :‘ Inside is the home of my people. . . It circled around the graves (坟墓)of our fathers , and we will never give up these graves to any man. ’ ”

But in 1874 , the U. S. government declared the valley open for white settlement and ordered the Nez Perce onto a reservation(保留地). Seeing that resistance was useless , Chief Joseph agreed to move.

Later , fighting broke out between the Nez Perce and U. S. soldiers. Chief Joseph tried to lead his people to Canada , winning several battles against the soldiers during their flight. But finally , he was forced to give in.

(1) Which historic site (on the map)lies in the south of today's Nez Perce Reservation ?

- A. Buffalo Eddy.
- B. Dug Bar.
- C. Joseph Canyon Viewpoint.
- D. Chief Looking Glass Camp.

(2) What can we learn about the Nez Perce lands from the map ?

- A. They were in the state of Oregon.
- B. They have become a historic site.
- C. They have become much smaller.
- D. They were limited to the Wallowa Valley.

- (3) From Paragraph 3 , we know that the Indians wanted to _____.
- A. show off their land
 - B. keep their land
 - C. turn their place into a graveyard
 - D. build their homes around the poles

Unit 19

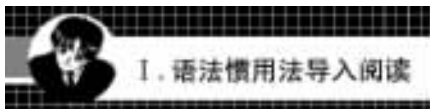
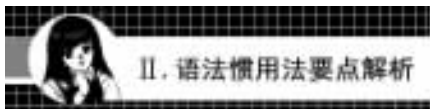


Image and Colour

One of the most important aspects of an image is colour. People are very sensitive(敏感的) to colour. Different colours have different effects on people. Red is an exciting colour. It creates an image of action , energy and danger. Red is almost the most frequently used colour in flags. Eighty per cent of the world's flags contained red. A study in German showed that football teams wearing red are more successful. Blue is very calm colour. Businessmen usually wear dark blue suits. Blue is also a peaceful colour. The flag of United Nations is light blue. Yellow is associated with openness and freedom. Green is a very relaxing colour. Surgeon(外科医生) nowadays wear green , because it is less tiring than white. Black creates an image of power and authority(权威). It is also a very threatening colour. White is a pure and strong colour. This is one reason why doctors wear white coats. We trust them more. Brown is the opposite of the black. It's warm and friendly , while black is threatening.

(169 words)



1. 关系副词 why 用法

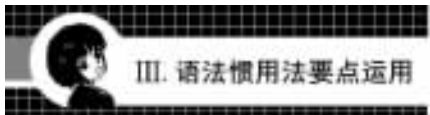
关系副词 why 引导定语从句，指原因并在从句中用作原因状语时，先行词只有 reason。例见本节选文。又如：

Is there a reason why she liked that ?

The main reason why he lost his job was that he drank too much.

2. 集体名词用法(II)

集体名词，如：people，police 等，常以单数形式出现，但意义为复数，谓语动词也用复数。例见本节选文。又如：There are over 100 police on duty every day at the city games.



1. 短文改错(2004 全国高考)

此题要求改正所给短文中的错误。对标有题号的每一行做出判断：如无错误，在该行右边的横线上画一个勾(√)；如有错误(每行只有一个错误)，则按下列情况改正：

该行多一个词：把多余的词用斜线(\)划掉，在该行右边横线上写出该词，并也用斜线(\)划掉。

该行缺一个词：在缺词处加一个漏词符号(∧)，在该行右边横线上写出该加的词。

该行错一个词：在错的词下划一横线，在该行右边横线上写出改正后的词。

注意：原行没有错的不要改。

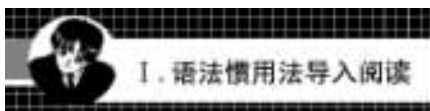
Dear Ralph ,

I'm a newcomer here of a small town. I would 1 _____
describe myself as shy and quietly. Before my classmates ,2 _____
it seems always difficult for me to do things well as 3 _____
them. I'm sure they will laugh to me and see me 4 _____
as a fool. So I feel unhappy every day. 5 _____

Besides ,I have few friends. I don't know that they 6 _____
don't like to talk with me. Sometimes , we talked to each other
7 _____
very well in class , but after class we become stranger at 8 _____
once. I am trying to improve the situation since it doesn't
9 _____
seem to work. Can you tell me about what I should do ?
10 _____

Yours ,
Xiao Wei

Unit 20



A Letter of Introduction

My dear friend ,

The bearer(持信人) of these lines , although a boy of thirteen , is one of my best and dearest friends and one of the most interesting people I have met for a long time. His name is Joseph Joachim. He was born in Hungary at Pesth , and he is going to London.

Of all the young talents that are now going about the world , I know none that is to be compared with this violinist. It is not only the excellence of his performances , but the absolute certainty of his becoming a leading artist—if God grants him health and leaves him as he is—which makes me feel such an interest in him. . .

He is not yet very far advanced in composition , but his performances of the Vieuxtemps. Bruch and Spohrconcertos , his accompanying of sonatas(奏鸣曲) , etc. is in my opinion as perfect and remarkable as may well be.

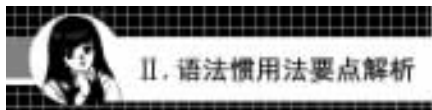
I think he will become a yeoman(皇室的侍者) in time , as both of us are. So pray , be kind to him , tell him where he can hear good

music , play to him , give him good advice , and for everything you may do for him , be sure that I shall be as much indebted(感激的) to you as possible. Farewell.

Very truly yours ,

F. M. B.

(215 words)



1. 介绍信写法

介绍信可分为普通介绍信和特殊介绍信两大类。不论是哪一种介绍信，都要将被介绍人的基本情况叙述清楚，说明介绍原由，以恰当方式提出希望对方给介绍人提供何种帮助，并向收信人致以谢意和问候。

注意使用介绍信惯用表达法及典型例句。如：

I am writing this note to make you acquainted with my friend. . .

This is to introduce Mr. Kenneth Burton , B. A. of Osmania University. I hope you will do all that you can do for him.

I take pleasure in introducing the bearer of this letter , Mr. Fred Barker.

2. not only... but also... 用法

这个结构是一个平级平衡结构，not only 和 but also 后接的词或短语总是平级的和平行的。因此，整个结构总是平衡的。常见的搭配有：not only NP but also NP ; not only VP but also VP ; not only PP but also PP 等。例如：

She speaks not only English , but also Chinese.

Not only students but also teachers went to watch football game.

This foreigner not only speaks Chinese fluently , but also writes Chinese well.

He is a man of broad interests. He not only collects stamps , but also goes fishing.

The boy speaks English not only at school , but also at home.

不平级的不平衡搭配,经常被看成错误的。如:

He collects not only stamps , but also goes fishing. (×)

3. 现在进行时表示将来

英语中, come , go , start , arrive , leave , stay 等动词的现在进行时形式,常用来表示将来。它们常有“意图”、“打算”、“安排”等意义,常与表示将来时间的状语连用。例见本节选文。又如: She is leaving on an evening flight.

4. none 用法

none 具有名词性质,可以代替名词在句子中充当主语或宾语。none 可以单独使用。如:

—How many of the cities have you visited ?

—None at all.

None has/have arrived yet ?

但是,在大多数情况下,none 用在 none of N (名词)结构中。如:

None of my friends live near the school.

None of us is/are afraid of difficulties.

None of the furniture is good.

I like none of those books.

I like none of that music.

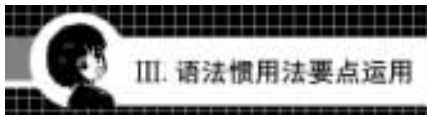
注意两点:

(1)none 替代复数名词或 none of 与复数名词连用充当主语时,谓语动词可以是单数,也可以是复数。

(2)当所谈人物或事物数量为两个时,不用 none 替代,也不与 none of 连用,而用 neither 替代,或与 neither of 连用。如:

Neither of his parents helped him with his English.

I like neither of those two houses.



1. 单项填空

(1) _____ of them knew about the plan because it was kept a secret. (1990 全国高考)

A. Each B. Any C. No one D. None

(2) I invited Tom and Ann to dinner, but _____ of them came. (1991 全国高考)

A. neither B. both C. either D. none

(3) They were all very tired, but _____ of them would stop to take a rest. (1995 全国高考)

A. any B. some C. none D. neither

(4) I invited Joe and Linda to dinner, but _____ of them came. (2004 北京高考)

A. neither B. either C. none D. both

2. 书面表达(2004 全国高考)

假设你是李华,你在报上看到北京电视台今年7月将举办外国人“学中文,唱中文歌”才艺大赛。你的美国朋友 Peter 正在北京一所大学学中文,你觉得他应去试一试。请按以下要点给他写信告知此事,并表示可以提供帮助。

比赛时间:7月18日

报名时间:截止到6月30日

报名地点：北京电视台

注意：1. 词数：100 左右

2. 可适当增加细节，以使行文连贯

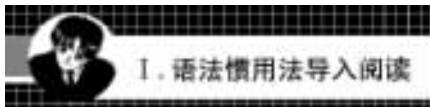
3. 参考词汇：才艺大赛 talent show

Dear Peter ,

Yours ,

Li Hua

Unit 21



Greeting Conventions(习俗) in Chinese Culture

The correct way of greeting a person is very important in Chinese culture : an improper greeting is considered very impolite. Among strangers , or on formal occasions the greeting “ Ni Hao ”(or “ Nin Hao ” if much respect is meant) , literally(字面的) “ you good ? ” is used. The phrase “ Have you eaten ? ” is used as a more familiar greeting in Chinese culture. Chinese culture considers it impolite to meet someone and not ask him/her to eat : he/she may be hungry !

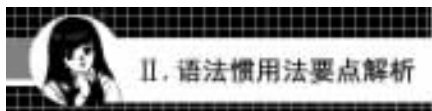
The traditional Chinese “ handshake ” consists of wrapping(握着) one and around the other and waving them up and down several times. Today this is rarely used , and the western style handshake is popular among most Chinese people when greeting , a slight bow often accompanies (伴随) the handshake. With the bow being deeper , the more respect is being given to the person.

The Chinese tends not to greet each other with greetings that may bear a negative(否定的) meaning such as “ you’re looking sad ” or “ you’re looking tired ”. This is considered improper. In formal situation or when addressing an elder or person with high status it is considered highly rude to address the person by their given name.

They should be addressed according to their designation , for example “ Mr. Tang , Doctor Liu , Chairman Lee ” , etc.

Business/name cards are used in Chinese business and will almost always be exchanged upon meeting a stranger. The card should be held in both hands when offered to the other person ; offering it with one hand is considered ill mannered.

(258 words)



1. consist of 用法

consist 一词，主要用于两个搭配中。一个是 consist of，意思是“由……组成”。如：This book consists of eight chapters. 另一个是 consist in，意思是“存于”、“存在于……”。如：Happiness consists in contentment.

2. consider 和 regard 用法

consider 与 regard 都有“认为”、“以为”的意思，但用法有差别。consider 表示经过思考或亲历之后而“以为”或“认为”。如：All the critics considered the book a masterpiece. regard 表示直接地“以为”或“认为”，往往是对事物外表或表象的评价。如：He regarded his wife as a beauty , though others found her plain.

在用法上，regard 一般不用于进行时，而且常与 as 等介词搭配，句法结构较为单一。如：He is generally regarded as one of the best writers in the country. consider 句法结构较为多样，可以直接接宾语、动词不定式、动词-ing 形式、that/wh-从句、以及宾语 + 名词/形容词结构。如：

We consider him (to be) a fool.

I'm considering changing my job.

Have you ever considered how difficult it is for the new students?

I consider it a great honor.

3. old 的比较级与最高级及其用法

形容词 old 的比较级和最高级有两种形式：older/oldest 和 elder/eldest。“elder, eldest”只用来表示长幼秩序。如：My elder brother is an engineer. 而“older, oldest”表示年龄差别。如：He is much older than she is.

4. both 用法

both 具有形容词功能，也具有代词功能。因此，可以用做名词的宾语，也可以用做名词的同位语，也可以用做主语和宾语。如：

Both brothers are clever.

I like them both.

Both look equally good to me.

I'll take both.

要注意 both 在句子中的位置：(1)名词之前；(2)名词之后；(3)系动词之后；(4)实义动词之前；(5)助动词与实意动词之间。如：

Both children study hard.

The letter was addressed to us both.

You are both too young.

They both like English.

They have both studied English.

My parents have both been invited.

You must both come here tonight.

注意：

(1) both 之前，不可以连用 a 或 the。

(2) 名词性 both 结构可以和 both of 结构通用。如：

The both children study hard. (×) (中国学生容易出现此错误。)

We were both born in March.

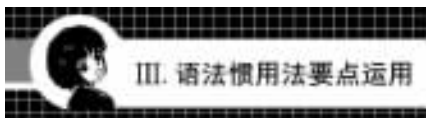
Both of us were born in March.

The letter was addressed to us both.

The letter was addressed to us both of us.

Both the children have been to Beijing.

Both of the children have been to Beijing.



1. 单项填空

(1) Four of Robert's children were at the party, including _____, Luke. (2003 安徽高考)

- A. the oldest B. an oldest one
C. the old D. an old one

(2) —Can I join your club, Dad?

—You can when you _____ a bit older. (1994 全国高考)

- A. get B. will get
C. are getting D. will have got

(3) Charles Babbage is generally considered _____ the first computer. (1993 全国高考)

- A. to have invented B. inventing
C. to invent D. having invented

2. 书面表达(2004 四川高考)

假设你是李华，加拿大一所学校将于今年暑假组织学生来你

校访问。其间，Andy Smith 将借住你家。请你代表全家写信给 Andy，欢迎他的到来，并告知有关事宜。信的要点如下：

※ 上午：学校活动

※ 下午：游览市区

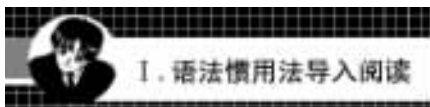
※ 晚上：看电视，玩游戏，聊天

注意：1. 词数：100 左右

2. 可适当增加细节，以使行文连贯

3. 参考词汇：安排 arrange

Unit 22



Applications for Entry to a College

2424 Merit Road
Centerville , Calif.

The Register of Admission
The Graduate School
The Pennsylvania State University
University Park , Pennsylvania 16802

Gentlemen :

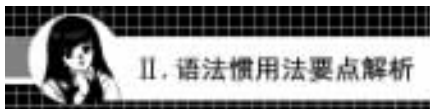
Please send me a catalog and an application for admission.

I am presently a junior at the Centerville High School , and plan on entering college in the 1998-99 academic year. Will you please send me your entrance requirements and examination dates.

Very truly yours ,

Yang Liping

(67 words)



1. 留学申请信写法

留学申请信必须包括下列各点：

- (1) 学校名称；
- (2) 拟入校时间；
- (3) 索要简章及申请表；
- (4) 本人姓名拼写和通讯地址。

留学申请信，常用惯用表达法或典型句子。如：

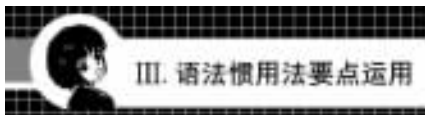
Please send me the current catalog for your university.

We would appreciate it if you would send us an application form.

I would like to apply for admission to your college.

I would greatly appreciate receiving copies of the required application forms and any instructions you may be so kind as to give me regarding my possible admission.

I should like to apply for one of the scholarship that your university may be offering to students from other countries.



1. 书面表达

请你以刘东的名义，向哈佛大学(Harvard University)写一封留学申请信，索取章程和申请表格。

2. 短文改错(2000 北京高考)

此题要求改正所给短文中的错误。对标有题号的每一行作出

判断：如无错误，在该行右边横线上画一个勾(√)；如有错误(每行只有一个错误)，则按下列情况改正：

该行多一个词：把多余的词用斜线(\)划掉，在该行右边横线上写出该词，并用斜线划掉。

该行缺一个词：在缺词处加一个漏字符号(∧)，在该行右边横线上写出该加的词。

该行错一个词：在错的词下划一横线，在该行右边横线上写出改正后的词。

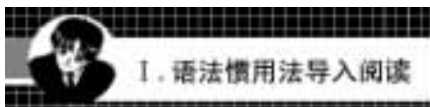
注意：原行没有错的不要改。

Dear Peter ,

Thanks very much on inviting me to your birthday 1 _____
party on Sunday. I'd like very much come but 2 _____
I had an examination on Monday morning. It is 3 _____
I very important exam but I can't afford to 4 _____
fail it. I'm spend all the whole weekend reading 5 _____
and prepare for it. So I'm really sorry that 6 _____
I won't be able to come in this time. Hope you 7 _____
can understand. I'll take this chance to wish 8 _____
you wonderful time on your birthday. Happy 9 _____
birthday , Peter , and many happy return of the day ! 10 _____

Yours ,
Li Ming

Unit 23



Shopping in America

Anna : As I was telling you , Masa , where you shop depends largely on what you need. If you want to buy an answering machine (语言复读机) or a CD-player , your best choice would probably be an appliance store(电气商店).

Will : Or Circuit City(电气城).

Masahiro : Why ?

Will : Because they usually have the best deals. They have sales on their TVs and CD-players every once in a while. And there are very few places that have such a wide selection.

Masahiro : I need to buy disks , at least two disk holders , notebooks , and that kind of stuff(东西).

Will : For office supplies , I suggest Office Max.

Anna : Or Comp USA. One good thing about living in a campus town is that you can easily get that stuff at any of the bookstores. No doubt they do overcharge (索价过高). I try to get around that by shopping around.

Masahiro : Shopping around ?

Anna : Yes. That simply means you go to different stores , check out the prices of items you need and purchase them from the stores with the lowest price or prices.

Masahiro : Where is Office Max located ?

Anna : There's one in the mall(购物中心) , so we can stop by there this afternoon.

Masahiro : Great ! Thanks.

Will : And you can always run to the discount stores whenever you're out of something you need right away. There are several around campus.

Anna : That's right. And they carry pretty much everything a student needs.

Will : They don't usually carry milk , though , so you might go to some other convenience stores(便利店) close by.

Anna : I wouldn't advise you to buy things in bulk(大批) from such stores. You may do your major shopping at the specialized stores. It's much cheaper , and more convenient in the long run.

Masahiro : Good advice ! Life sounds great in this town ! Oh ! Before I forget , guys , where can I rent movies ? I love watching movies in my spare time.

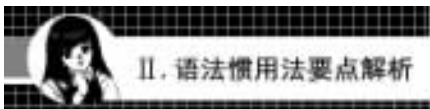
Anna : Me too ! Let's see. There are two video stores close to your apartment. One's Blockbuster , and the other's Rentertainment. I believe they both have specials(特价) on weekdays , right Will ?

Will : Yes. But not for the new releases.

Anna : Are you guys ready to go to the mall ?

Masahiro & Will : Sure. Let's go.

(364 words)



1. do + V-ing 用法

英语中, do + V-ing 结构, 通常描述需要一定时间完成的活动, 或一种习惯性的活动, 如日常活动或爱好。在这个结构中, V-ing 之前可以用 the, my, your, his, some, much, little, a lot of 等词或短语修饰。例见本节选文。又如:

Can you do the cleaning for me ?

I usually do most of my washing on Saturdays.

He does a lot of running on Sunday morning.

I'd like to do some reading this weekend.

2. do 的强调用法

助动词 do 可以置于另一动词之前, 加强语气。表示强调的助动词 do, 有人称、数和时态变化。如:

Do be careful !

Do shut up !

He does speak English well.

She did write the paper herself.

3. 时间介词 at, on, in 用法

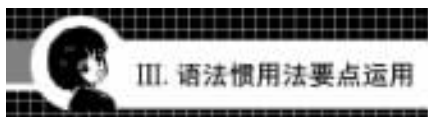
英语中表示时间的介词, 最常用的有三个。它们表示不同的时间范围。

(1) at 的范围是时刻与钟点, 夜晚, 假期。如: at dawn ; at 5 o'clock ; at 7 :30 pm ; at night ; at Christmas ; at the weekend。

(2) on 的范围是星期, 日期, 特殊某日。如: on Sunday ; on (the) 4th (of) May ; on Good Friday ; on New Year Day ; on my birthday ; on the following day。

(3) in 的范围是一天的部分(不包括 night), 月份, 季节, 年份, 年代, 世纪, 千年等。如: in the morning(s); in April; in (the) Summer; in 1996; in the 1990s; in the 20th century; in the new millennium。

注意: 时间词语之前有时有冠词, 有时没有, 与搭配有关。



1. 单项填空

(1) You can't wear a blue jacket _____ that shirt—it'll look terrible. (2004 湖南高考)

A. on B. above C. up D. over

(2) I hope you don't mind me asking, _____ where did you buy those shoes? (2004 广西高考)

A. so B. and C. yet D. but

(3) If you buy more than ten, they knock 20 pence off _____. (2004 四川高考)

A. a price B. price C. the price D. prices

2. 改错: 在下列各句的划线部分 A、B、C、D 中有一个错误, 指出这一错误并改正, 分别写在句后的括号和空格里。(1996 全国高考)

1. Even though Henry has learned Japanese for three years before he came to Japan, it was still difficult for him to express himself in Japanese. () _____

2. Tom stood up, turned towards me, and speaking so softly that I

A B C

couldn't hear what he was saying. ()_____

D

3. When others were laughing over my joke , she sat there , silent , as

A

B

C

if she had not heard of even a word of my story. ()_____

D

4. We are hoping that a concert will be held soon at which

A

B

the works of Liszt will play. ()_____

C

D

5. He knew it was strict against the law , but he still parked his car

A

B

C

in front of the city bank. ()_____

D

6. Charlie offered me twenty dollars for my jacket , but it

A

B

was not worth half that many. ()_____

C

D

7. The football team has done well this year. All of their members

A

B

C

have trained very hard. ()_____

D

8. The doctor talked about his research for an hour , but not a word

A

B

C

John understood. ()_____

D

9. The crowd gathered at the entrance to the hotel , hoping to

A

B

be lucky enough to have look at the pop singer. ()_____

C

D

10. Contrary to common practice , he let his daughter studying at

A

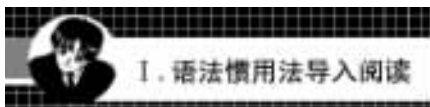
B

home instead of sending her to a school nearby. ()_____

C

D

Unit 24



At the Mall

Anna : Here we are. I'm going to stop by Billy's first. Some of their dresses might be on sale (打折) today. And I need to get something for Lisa's birthday. She's into name brands (名牌). Any suggestions ?

Will : A Gucci handbag or Calvin Klein T-shirt might be nice.

Anna : Well , then would you go ahead ?

Masahiro : Why not meet here in 30 minutes ?

Will : Sounds good. I guess I'll just look around.

Salesperson : Can I help you , Sir ?

Will : No thanks , I'm just looking. Well , just out of curiosity , how much is that necklace ?

Salesperson : Twenty-nine.

Will : Really ! My sister's birthday is tomorrow. She loves jewelry. I wasn't sure I could afford it.

Salesperson : You'll find that a lot of our stuff is amazingly affordable.

Will : Well , I'll take it.

Salesperson : It's a good choice. I'm sure she'll love it.

Will : Let's hope so.

Salesperson : Cash or charge , Sir ?

Will : Charge , please. Do you accept Discover ?

Salesperson : Yes , we do.

Will : Great.

[Meanwhile , in another section of the store.]

Salesperson : Do you need some help , Sir ?

Masahiro : Well , I'm looking for a calculator.

Salesperson : We have some. Come in and have a look.

Masahiro : Thank you.

Salesperson : You're welcome.

[A few minutes later.]

Anna : Oh , there you are , Masa ! What did you get ?

Masahiro : Just a calculator.

Anna : Good choice. And you , Will ? Find anything interesting ?

Will : A necklace for Stephanie's birthday.

Anna : Lucky her !

Will : Did you get anything ?

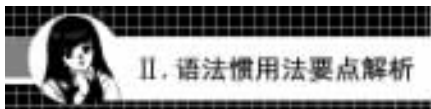
Anna : Just a couple of silly earrings that I liked. I did a lot of window-shopping(只看橱窗,不买东西).

Will : That can't hurt.

Anna : True. Well , I'm going to have to stop by Jewel on my way home. Is that okay with you ? I'm almost completely out of groceries.

Will : No problems. I could pick up a couple of things , too.

(294 words)



1. 提建议的常用句式

提出建议,有一些常用句式。如:

Let's go and have a look. (T20)

Should we go now?(T20)

What/How about a picnic this Sunday?(T20)

Why don't you buy a computer?(T20)

Why not go to a movie?(T20)

这些句式,多用于较为随意的场合,即熟人之间。

2. 价格表示法

询问价格,有一些常用句式。如:

How much is it/are they?(T14)

How many/much would you like?(T14)

How much is the computer?

Is it cheap/expensive?(T53)

回答价格询问,也有一些常用句式。如:

It is 5 yuan.

The dictionary costs me 100 yuan. (T53)

The dictionary is cheap/expensive. (T53)

3. be going to VP 用法

英语 be going to +VP 结构,可以表示现在打算在最近或将来要做的事。如:

I am going to meet Tom at the station at ten.

We are going to call a meeting to discuss it.

be going to 和 will 在含义和用法上略有不同。be going to 往

is too weak.

A. have

B. having

C. had

D. to have

(5) Computers should be made cheaper so that people can _____ them.

A. accept

B. acknowledge

C. afford

D. acclaim

(6) I can only find one shoe. Have you seen _____.

A. others

B. the other one

C. the others

D. other one

(7) _____, he stopped to have a drink.

A. On his way to home

B. In his way home

C. On his way home

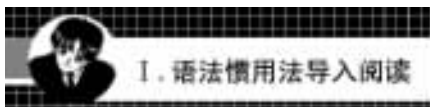
D. In his way to home

2. 情景对话

(1) 邀请你的同窗好友同你一道去超市购物。

(2) 你的复读机坏了,现要去电气城买一台新的。

Unit 25



Bargaining

Salesperson : How are you today , Madame ?

Anna : Fine , thank you. I'm looking for a pair of shoes for myself.
Could you give me some advice ?

Salesperson : It depends on whether you like some dress shoes , or
just casual ones.

Anna : Casual ones , I think.

Salesperson : So how about this pair ? They are hand-made leather
ones and the latest fashion.

Anna : But this white is too bright. Do you have any others apart
from(除.....之外) those on display(陈列) ?

Salesperson : Let me check. How about brown ones ?

Anna : That's all right.

Salesperson : What size do you take ?

Anna : Seven and a half , please.

Salesperson : Here you are.

Anna : Well , it's the right size , and the color suits me very well. I
like them very much. How much are they ?

Salesperson : \$ 50.

Anna : But that's rather more than I was thinking of giving. Can you come down a bit ?

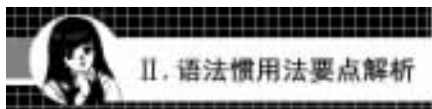
Salesperson : How much would you like it to be ?

Anna : \$ 30. That's a reasonable price.

Salesperson : You certainly don't want to deprive(剥夺) of all my profits(利润), do you ? Well, then, how about splitting the difference ? \$ 40. That's the best I can do.

Anna : OK. Done.

(190 words)



1. 讨价、还价常用表达法

讨价、还价，有一些常用句式：

May I try it on ? (T14)

It's too big/small/long/cheap for me. (T53)

Sorry, it's too expensive. (T14)

Can you come down a bit ?

What colour/size/kind would you like ? (T14)

Do you have any other colors/sizes/kinds ? (T14)

Here's your change. (T14)

Two and a half kilos /pounds, please. (T14)

What about this one ? (T14)

That's fine. I'll take it. (T14)

Just have a look. (T14)

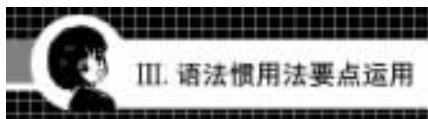
Well, I'll think about it. (T14)

2. advice 用法

advice 意思是“忠告, 劝告, 建议”, 是不可数名词。很多事物在汉语中是可数(如“一个忠告”, “一则新闻”, “两件家具”等)的, 在英语中, 它们都是不可数的。要表达“一个”、“两个”之类的概念, 要加 a piece of, two pieces of 等修饰语。《英语课程标准》中, 这类名词有: (a piece of)advice, (a fit of)anger, (a piece of)bread, (a piece of)cake, (a piece of)cloth, (an article of)clothing, (a piece of)news, (a piece of)work, (a lump of)sugar, (a piece of/a sheet of)paper 等。

3. x pair(s) of 用法

单词 x pair(s) of 表达“x 对”、“x 双”或“x 副”的概念, 如: a pair of shoes, three small pairs of shoes。《英语课程标准》词汇表中, glasses(眼镜), trousers(裤子)和 scissors(剪刀)等词, 也用 a pair of, two pairs of 等修饰或计量。这些表达法和汉语习惯不同, 汉语说“一条裤子”, “一把剪刀”, 如果英语说 a trouser 和 a scissor 就会弄出“一只裤腿”和“一边剪刀”的笑话。



1. 完形填空(2004 广西高考)

“My name's Jim Shelley and I'm an addict(有瘾的人)...”

With these words I began to 1 the problem, the problem of my telephone addiction. I used to call people 2, from the moment I woke up to the time I went to sleep. I 3 to be phoned, I wanted to phone. Just one more call.

It started socially — a few calls each day. It seemed 4, just a quick chat. Gradually though, the 5 got worse. Soon it was 6

__ use , until , finally , addiction.

And it began to affect(影响) my __ 7 __. During the day I would disappear for __ 8 __ call. If I couldn't make a call , I spent the whole time waiting for the phone to ring. Getting more and more __ 9 __ , in the end , I would ring someone , then someone else , __ 10 __ myself just one more call.

I was phoning people and __ 11 __ messages to make sure __ 12 __ calls would see me through the day. I used to arrive at friends' homes and before the door was closed , go straight for the phone with the __ 13 __ " Is it OK if I just use the phone. . . ?" At work , I became __ 14 __ when my fellow workers tried to __ 15 __ me from using the phone. And one day I hit my boss (with the phone). Finally , the police caught me __ 16 __ a phone box that had taken my last one pound coin , and I was __ 17 __ to see a psychiatrist(心理医生).

I haven't __ 18 __ a phone in the house for three weeks now , and it's several days __ 19 __ I used a phone box. I try not to watch TV because there are __ 20 __ people on it making phone calls. My name is Jim Shelley and I am an addict.

(1) A. face B. find C. accept D. notice

(2) A. now and then B. all the time
C. at home D. at work

(3) A. tried B. asked C. waited D. invited

(4) A. polite B. important C. fine D. special

(5) A. condition B. situation C. result D. effect

(6) A. frequent B. regular
C. unusual D. particular

(7) A. friends B. study C. family D. work

(8) A. a quick B. a secret C. an expected D. an extra

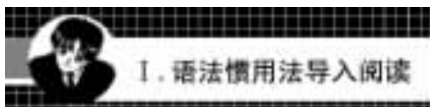
- (9) A. hopeful B. delighted C. frightened D. anxious
- (10) A. forcing B. telling C. giving D. limiting
- (11) A. leaving B. taking
C. passing D. recording
- (12) A. long B. immediate
C. enough D. surprising
- (13) A. saying B. demands C. wish D. words
- (14) A. careful B. mad
C. determined D. helpless
- (15) A. save B. reduce
C. protect D. stop
- (16) A. destroying B. using
C. stealing D. emptying
- (17) A. offered B. guided
C. ordered D. reminded
- (18) A. missed B. had C. received D. fixed
- (19) A. as B. when C. if D. since
- (20) A. always B. just
C. more D. different

2. 情景对话

(1) 去书店买书，请店员推荐一本价廉物美的教学辅导书 (reference book)。

(2) 去服装店买一件休闲衣，与店员讨价还价。

Unit 26



Malls in the U. S. A.

Malls are popular places for Americans to go. Some people spend so much time at malls that they are called “mall rats”. Mall rats shop until they drop in the hundreds of stores under one roof.

People like malls for many reasons. They feel safe because malls have police stations of private security guards(私人保镖). Parking is usually free , and the weather inside is always fine. The newest malls have beautiful rest areas with waterfalls(瀑布) and large green trees.

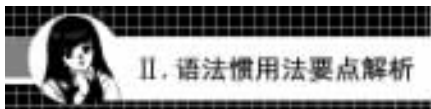
The largest mall in the United States is the Mall of America in Minnesota. It covers 4.2 million square feet. It has 350 stores , eight nightclubs , and a seven-acre park ! There are parking spaces for 12 , 750 cars. About 750 , 000 people shop there every week.

The first indoor mall in the United States was built in 1965 in Edina , Minnesota. People love doing all their shopping in one place. More malls were built around the country. Now , malls are like town centers where people come to do many things , they shop , of course , they also eat in food courts that have food from all over the world. They see movies at theatres. Some people even get their daily exercise

by doing the new sport of “mall walking”. Others go to malls to meet friends.

In some malls , people can see a doctor or a dentist and even attend church. In other words , people can do just about everything in malls. Now residents (居民) can actually live in their favorite shopping center.

(248 words)



1. spend , take , cost 用法

英语单词 spend , take 和 cost 都可以用来表示时间和精力等消耗或消费概念。

(1) 表示“花费金钱”的概念 , 用 cost 和 spend。cost 表示“某物值多少金钱”或“某物花费某人多少金钱或代价等” ; spend 表示“某人花费多少金钱购买某物”。如 :

This project lasted four years and cost one billion US dollars.

My English teacher spends a lot of money on books.

(2) 表达“花费时间”概念 , 用 cost , spend 或 take 都行。cost 和 take 表达“某事花费或消耗(某人)多少时间” ; spend 则表达“某人花费多少时间做某事”。如 :

Writing books costs/takes a great deal of time.

It took him a year to get a new company started.

He spent a year to get a new company started.

He spends a great deal of time writing books.

2. 被动语态时态

英语动词有主动和被动两种语态。主动语态表示主语是动作

执行者；而被动语态表示主语是动作承受者。被动语态由“be + 过去分词”构成。被动语态时态变化只变化 be 形式(其变化规则与 be 相同)，过去分词部分不变。疑问式和否定式变化也与 be 相同。现将被动语态常见的和较常见的时态变化列表如下：

形态 时间	一般	进行	完成
现在	I am told	I am being told	I have been told
过去	I was told	I was being told	I had been told
将来	I shall be told	无此时态，用一般将来时代替	I shall have been told
过去将来	I should be told		

3. all over 用法

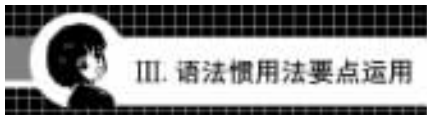
《英语课程标准》词汇表“习惯用语和固定搭配”中列有 all over，释义为“到处，遍及，结束”。表示“到处”时，all over 用做副词，意义等于 everywhere；表示“遍及”时，all over 整体用作介词，常见搭配有 all over the country，all over the world 等；表示“结束”时，主要用作表语。如：

I looked all over for my book.

It is raining all over the country.

The scientist is famous all over the world.

Hard life will be all over with you.



1. 单项填空

(1) —The window is dirty.

—I know. It _____ for weeks. (2004 广西高考)

- A. hasn't cleaned B. didn't clean
C. wasn't cleaned D. hasn't been cleaned

(2) More patients _____ in hospital this year than last year. (2004 江苏高考)

- A. treated B. have treated
C. had been treated D. have been treated

(3) According to the art dealer, the painting _____ to go for at least a million dollars. (2004 四川高考)

- A. is expected B. expects
C. expected D. is expecting

(4) A good storyteller must be able to hold his listeners' curiosity _____ he reaches the end of the story. (2003 上海高考)

- A. when B. unless C. after D. until

(5) Some passengers complain that it usually _____ so long to fill in travel insurance documents. (2003 上海高考)

- A. costs B. takes C. spends D. spares

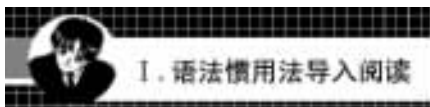
(6) —Was his father very strict with him when he was at school?

—Yes. He had never praised him _____ he became one of the top students in his grade. (2003 北京高考)

- A. after B. unless C. until D. when

2. 阅读莎士比亚《威尼斯商人》第四幕第一场，将其改编成一个小短剧，并尝试扮演中间的一至两个角色(以夏洛克为最佳)。

Unit 27



English Cooking

(Cooking varies from country to country even though the basic ingredients(成分) may be very much the same. Every country has its own national dishes some of which may be world famous. Traditional English dishes ,like roast beef(烤牛肉) and Yorkshire pudding(布丁) and fish and chips(薯条), are quite well known abroad. Here Anne Woodrow and Renata , a girl from Italy , are talking about food generally and English food in particular.)

Anne :Do you miss your home cooking a lot or are you getting used to our English food ,Renata ?

Renata :Oh , there are quite a lot of dishes I miss very much indeed. You see , our food is much more spicy(辛辣的) than yours. But I must say English food is much better than I thought it was going to be.

Anne :Really ?What are your favorite English dishes ?

Renata :Well ,first of all I think the quality of your food is excellent. Your daily products are so fresh and your meat is usually so tender(嫩的). And there is so much to choose from in the

shops.

Anne : Yes , but what English dishes do you particularly like ? Or don't you like any of them ?

Renata : Well , I'm a little tired of your fish and chips , and roast beef and Yorkshire pudding is only good when properly cooked at home. I don't like the way you cook your vegetables either , and. . .

Anne : So you don't really like any of our food , do you ?

Renata : Oh no , I didn't say that.

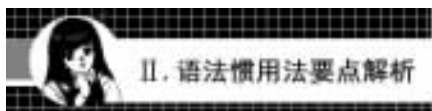
Anne : Well ?

Renata : I'm very fond of the steak and kidney(肾脏) pudding you make , and I like your apple pies. . . and. . .

Anne : It's very nice of you to say so !

Renata : And I think your cooked breakfast are simply marvelous. Nothing like them where I come from.

(298 words)



1. used to NP/V-ing P 和 used to VP 用法

《英语课程标准》词汇表中列有 used to sth 和 used to do sth 两个短语。used to sth 意思为“习惯于”某事或做某事，其中 to 是介词，后接名词或名词性短语，形成 used to NP 或/used to V-ing P 结构。used to do sth 之中 used to 是一个特殊的复合情态动词，表示“过去常常或曾经”做某事，它的否定式为 used not to，简略式为 usedn't to。例如：

You will soon get used to do the English food.

She is quite used to hard work.

She is quite used to working hard.

He used to live in London.

Life used to be much harder.

Used you to walk to the school?

There used to be a school there, usedn't there?

2. 形容词比较级修饰语

形容词比较级可以用下列词或短语修饰：a bit, a little, rather, much, far, by far, many, a lot, lots, a great deal, any, still, even 等。此外，还可以用表示倍数的词或度量名词修饰。除 by far 外，这些词或短语都必须置于形容词或副词前面。例见本节选文。又如：If there were no examinations, we should have a much more happier time at school.

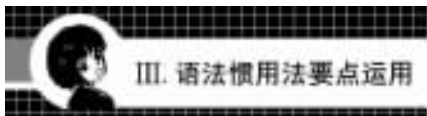
3. the same 用法

same 表示“同样一个”、“同样的人或事物”概念时，常与定冠词 the 连用，可在句中作定语、表语、主语和宾语。例见本节选文。又如：

They are twins. They look the same.

The same is the case with me.

She went to swim and I'll do the same.



1. 单项填空

(1) I _____ to my new job.

A. used

B. am getting used

C. use

D. am using

(每行只有一个错误), 则按下列情况改正:

此行多一个词: 把多余的词用斜线(\)划掉, 在该行右边横线上写出该词, 并也用斜线划掉。

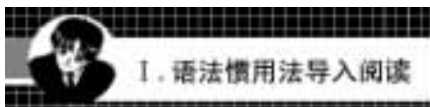
此行缺一个词: 在缺词处加一个漏字符号(^), 在该行右边横线上写出该加的词。

此行错一个词: 在错的词下划一横线, 在该行右边横线上写出改正后的词。

注意: 原行没有错的不要改。

This is a story told by my father. "When I was boy, 1 _____
the most exciting thing was when to celebrate the Spring 2 _____
Festival. My grandma was the best cooker in the world 3 _____
but could make the most delicious dishes. One time, I just 4 _____
couldn't wait for the Spring Festival dinner. As I was 5 _____
about take a piece from a cooked duck, I saw Grandma in 6 _____
the kitchen looking at me. Shake her head, she said, 'It 7 _____
isn't a good time to do that, dear.' At once I apologize 8 _____
and controlled me at my best till the dinner started. You 9 _____
know, that was a dinner we had waited for several month. " 10 _____

Unit 28



Ordering Lunch

Karl : Do you have time to stop for lunch ?

Ann : Yes , I'm hungry. This restaurant has a good selection and the prices are moderate(中档的).

Karl : That sounds fine with me. Let's try it.

Hostess : Good afternoon. How many are in your party ?

Ann : Just two and we'd like a booth in the nonsmoking section , if you have one.

Hostess : Right this way. Follow me. Will this booth(包厢) be all right ?

Karl : The one by the window would be better , thanks.

Hostess : No problem. Here are your menus. Your server will be right with you.

Server : Hello , my name is Chris , and I'm your server today. May I bring you something to begin with , a drink or some appetizers (开胃酒) perhaps ?

Karl : No appetizer for me. I'll have a glass of water for now.

Ann : I'd like an iced tea.

Server : Well. Are you ready to order ?

Karl : I'm ready. I'll have some steak. What about you , Ann ?

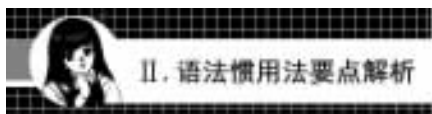
Ann : I'll I have a cheese burger(汉堡包) , a small order of fries , and a large Diet Pepsi.

Server : Will that be all ?

Karl : I think so. Please bring us the check when you return with our food. We're pressed for time(赶时间).

Server : Okay.

(199 words)



1. 就餐与点菜表达法

就餐与点菜，英语有一些常见习惯表达法：

Would you like something to eat/drink ? (T12)

What would you like (to have) ? (T12)

—Which do you prefer , rice or noodles ? (T12)

—I prefer noodles.

—What would you like to drink , tea or coffee ? (T12)

—I'd like green tea.

Can I have some more soup ? (T12)

Would you like some more fish ? (T12)

Just a little , please. (T12)

It's very delicious , but I can't eat any more. (T12)

No , thank you. I've had enough. (T12)

2. 英语系动词用法

除 be 之外，英语中还有很多特殊系动词，如 sound , look 等。

Unit 29

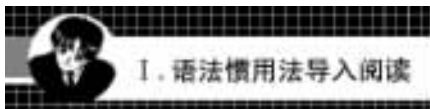


Table Manners

Mother : Go wash your hands , Danny. Dinner is ready.

Danny : Yes , Mom.

Mother : All right , everybody. Time for dinner !

Father : It makes my mouth water , Mother.

Mother : Set a good example for the kids , Father. (Danny stands up and reaches for the saltshaker (食盐瓶).) Don't do that , Danny.

Danny : But I want the salt.

Mother : You can ask Fanny to pass the saltshaker.

Danny : All right. (to Fanny) After you have used them yourself , would you please pass me the salt and pepper ?

Fanny : Sure. Here you are.

Danny : Thank you.

Fanny : You're welcome. . . Shall I serve the soup , Mother ?

Mother : Yes , please. (Fanny serves everybody soup.) Danny !

Danny : What is it this time ?

Mother : Don't make any sound when you have your soup.

Danny : Yes , Mother.

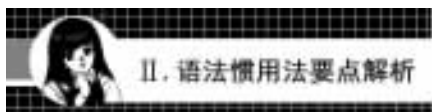
Father : Don't be so hard on him , Mother. He's only a child.

Mother : He's old enough to learn table manners.

Father : You can teach him in a more pleasant way. You'll spoil his appetite(败坏他的胃口).

Mother : Maybe you're right. I shouldn't have blamed him before I taught him.

(173 words)



1. 祈使句

祈使句表达命令、要求、请求、劝告等。祈使句有两种类型。一种是以动词原形开头，有时也可在动词原形之前加 do，但只限于省略第二人称主语的句子。例见本节选文。又如：Take this seat. 否定结构为 don't + 动词原形。如：Don't move. 第二种祈使句以 let 开头。如：Let's have another try , shall we ? 或 Let us have another try , will you ? “Let's/Let us”否定形式为 Let's/Let us + not + 动词原形，如：Let's not talk of that matter.

2. “V + NP + VP”结构

在“主语 + 动词 + 宾语 + 不定式宾补”句式中，如果动词(V)表示“感觉”意义，如 see , feel , smell , hear , watch 等，或表示“致使”意义，如 have , make , let 等，不定式宾补不带 to。例如本节选文：It makes my mouth water(流口水)。又如：John made her tell him everything. 在“have known + 宾语 + 不定式宾补”句式中，不定式也可不带 to。例如：Have you ever known him come on

time? “V + NP + VP”结构转换为被动态时，句末不定式结构中要有 to，句式为“NP + be + V-ed to VP”。如：She was made to tell him everything.

3. enough 用法

《英语课程标准》词汇表中，enough 可作名词、形容词和副词。enough 用做副词时，一般放在所修饰的词后面，例见本节选文。又如：John didn't do well enough in the examination. Enough 用作形容词修饰名词时，既可后置，也可前置。例如：

I have enough time.

I have time enough.

I haven't got enough money to buy the dictionary.

enough 用做名词(或代词)时，意思为“足够的人”或“足够的物”。例如：Is five yuan enough for that?

注意：习惯搭配 have enough of sth/sb 意思为“受够了某事或某人”的用法。如：I'm surprised you haven't had enough of that noise outside. 另外，还可以记住一个谚语，Enough is enough(适可而止)。

4. “ought to/should + have + V-ed”用法

这个结构是一种虚拟语气，肯定式表示所指的事该做而未做，否定式表示所指的事不该做而已经做了。使用这一结构可表达指责、自责、后悔或抱憾之意。例见本节选文。又如：

I'm sorry. I ought to have phoned to tell you I was coming.

You should have arrived before 5.

5. serve 用法

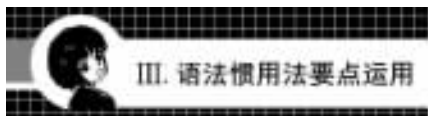
动词 serve 表达“服务”或“提供……服务”的概念。主要用法有：

(1) serve + O(间接宾语) + O(直接宾语)。如：She served us tea and toast.

(2) serve + NP(物) + to + NP(人)。如: She served tea and toast to us.

(3) serve + NP(人) + with + NP(物)。如: She served us with tea and toast.

(4) serve + NP(物) + Adj.。如: Make sure you serve the coffee hot.



1. 单项填空

(1) _____ to take this adventure course will certainly learn a lot of useful skills. (2000 全国高考)

- A. Brave enough students B. Enough brave students
C. Students brave enough D. Students enough brave

(2) —Mum, I think I'm _____ to get back to school.

—Not really, my dear. You'd better stay at home for another day or two. (1993 全国高考)

- A. so well B. so good
C. well enough D. good enough

(3) Tom ought not to _____ me your secret, but he meant no harm. (1993 全国高考)

- A. have told B. tell
C. be telling D. having told

(4) Jenny _____ have kept her word. I wonder why she changed her mind. (1991 全国高考)

- A. must B. should C. need D. would

(5) I told Sally how to get here, but perhaps I _____ for her.

(1994 全国高考)

- A. had to write it out B. must have written it out
C. should have written it out D. ought to write it out

(6) If I had _____, I'd visit Europe, stopping at all the small interesting places. (1998 全国高考)

- A. a long enough holiday B. an enough long holiday
C. a holiday enough long D. a long holiday enough

(7) Tom was made _____ us everything.

- A. told B. tell C. to tell D. telling

(8) I often see lights in that empty house. Do you think I _____ report it to the police? (2004 广西高考)

- A. should B. may C. will D. can

(9) Mr. White _____ at 8 30 for the meeting, but he didn't show up. (2004 广西高考)

- A. should have arrived B. should arrive
C. should have had arrived D. should be arriving

(10) _____ him and then try to copy what he does. (1999 全国高考)

- A. Mind B. Glance at
C. Stare at D. Watch

2. 阅读理解(2000 全国高考)

The easy way out isn't always easiest. I learned that lesson when I decided to treat Doug, my husband of one month, to a special meal. I glanced through my cookbook and chose a menu which included homemade bread. Knowing the bread would take time, I started on it as soon as Doug left for work. As I was not experienced in cooking, I thought if a dozen was good, two dozen would be better, so I doubled everything. As Doug loved oranges, I also opened a can of

orange and poured it all into the bowl. Soon there was a sticky dough (面团) covered with ugly yellowish marks. Realizing I had been defeated, I put the dough in the rubbish bin outside so I wouldn't have to face Doug laughing at my work. I went on preparing the rest of the meal, and, when Doug got home, we sat down to Cornish chicken with rice. He tried to enjoy the meal but seemed disturbed. Twice he got up and went outside, saying he thought he heard a noise. The third time he left, I went to the windows to see what he was doing. Looking out, I saw Doug standing about three feet from the rubbish bin, holding the lid up with a stick and looking into the container. When I came out of the house, he dropped the stick and explained that there was something alive in our rubbish bin. Picking up the stick again, he held the lid up enough for me to see. I felt cold. But I stepped closer and looked harder. Without doubt it was my work. The hot sun had caused the dough to double in size and the fermenting yeast (酵母) made the surface shake and sigh as though it were breathing. I had to admit what the "living thing" was and why it was there. I don't know who was more embarrassed (尴尬) by the whole thing Doug or me.

(1) The writer's purpose in writing this story is _____.

- A. to tell an interesting experience
- B. to show the easiest way out of a difficulty
- C. to describe the trouble facing a newly married woman
- D. to explain the difficulty of learning to cook from books

(2) Why did the woman's attempt at making the bread turn out to be unsuccessful?

- A. The canned orange had gone bad.
- B. She didn't use the right kind of flour.

- C. The cookbook was hard to understand.
- D. She did not follow the directions closely.

(3) Why did the woman put the dough in the rubbish bin ?

- A. She didn't see the use of keeping it
- B. She meant to joke with her husband.
- C. She didn't want her husband to see it.
- D. She hoped it would soon dry in the sun.

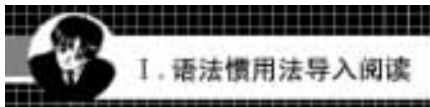
(4) What made the dough in the rubbish bin ?

- A. The rising and falling movement.
- B. The strange-looking marks.
- C. Its shape.
- D. Its size.

(5) When Doug went out the third time , the woman looked out of the window because she was _____.

- A. surprised at his being interested in the bin
- B. afraid that he would discover her secret
- C. unhappy that he didn't enjoy the meal
- D. curious to know what disturbed him

Unit 30



Develop an Exercise Plan to Lose Weight

How do you know how much exercise you'll have to do to burn your target number of calories(卡路里)? Well, it depends upon your weight and what kind of exercise you do. Heavier people burn more calories during physical activity than lighter people do. More intense (剧烈的) physical exercise, such as running, burns more calories than easier exercise, like walking.

Here are some examples of the energy expended by a 150 - pound person in 30 minutes of continuous exercise :

Aerobics(有氧运动), 200 ~ 250 calories

Bicycling, Stationary 250 ~ 300 calories

Bicycling, Actual 300 ~ 400 calories

Running, 5-6 mph 300 ~ 350 calories

Stair climber 200 ~ 250 calories

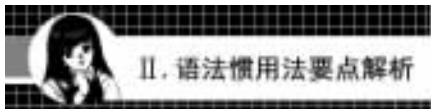
Swimming laps 350 calories

Walking briskly(疾走) 150 ~ 180 calories

Figure out what sort of exercise you're going to do, where you're going to do it, and when you're going to do it, and create a schedule you can follow. It's important to do this before you start, so

that you don't become frustrated(泄气的) and quit when you can't figure out what to do. If you like to use exercise equipment and you don't want to buy any ,you're going to need access(接近) to a gym. If you want to run or bicycle ,you need to figure out how to do that without hurting yourself. Sort it all out ahead of time and it'll be a lot easier when you're actually working out.

(217 words)



1. 特殊疑问词用法

特殊疑问词包括疑问代词 what , who , whom , whose , which 和疑问副词 when , where , how , why 等,它们在句首构成的句子是特殊疑问句。特殊疑问句答语要针对问句中的疑问词所问内容回答。反之,如疑问词缺失而已有答案,可以根据答案(即疑问词所问内容)来推导出疑问词。

2. 助动词 do 的替代用法

助动词 do 可用作代动词,代替已出现的动词,避免重复。例如:She swims better than I do. (她游泳比我好。)

I don't like coffee and neither does my wife. (我不喜欢喝咖啡,我妻子也不喜欢。)

3. it 形式主语用法

it 可以在句首充当形式主语,使不定式结构、-ing 分词结构或名词性分句结构等构成的真实主语后置,以达成句子结构平衡。具体形式为:“It + VP(谓语) + to VP/V-ing P/Clause(名词性)”。例如:

It's a good habit to take a walk after supper.

It was pleasant meeting you in London that day.

It was not known whether there was gold left in the mine.

4. so that 用法及结果状语从句

so that 引导结果状语从句。例见本节选文。结果状语从句，还可以由下列连词引导：so, that, so... that, such... that。结果状语从句都放在主句之后。例如：It was very warm, so that people could swim in rivers. 要注意 so... that 和 such... that 区别。在这两个结构中，so 修饰形容词或副词，such 修饰名词。如：

She was so worried about the test that she couldn't sleep well.

She was in such a hurry that she forgot to say thanks.

5. if 用法及真实条件从句

引导条件从句的连词，最常见的是 if，此外还有 unless, suppose, so long as 等。如果说话人把条件视为可以发生的事实，这种条件句是真实条件句。最常见的真实条件句，其条件分句谓语动词用一般现在时形式，主句用一般将来时。如：If it stops raining, I'll go for a walk. 有时条件分句和主句动词均为一般现在时。如：If he's here, he's in the garden.

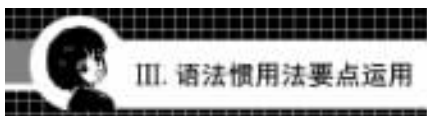
6. without 用法

英语中表达伴随(情况、环境、条件或行为等)，即“带着(某事物)”或“随着(某事物)”等意思，可以用“with + NP / V-ing P”结构。如：

I read the book with great delight.

Skill comes with experience.

要表达无伴随，即“不带(某事物)”或“不随(某事物)”等意思，则用“without + NP / V-ing P”结构。例如本节选文中“ If you want to run or bicycle, you need to figure out how to do that without hurting yourself. ”又如：She always speaks without thinking.



III. 语法惯用法要点运用

1. 单项填空

- (1) Sally worked late in the evening to finish her report _____ her boss could read it first thing next morning. (2003 安徽高考)
A. so that B. because C. before D. or else
- (2) John shut everybody out of the kitchen _____ he could prepare his grand surprise for the party. (2002 全国高考)
A. which B. when C. so that D. as if
- (3) The Parkers bought a new house but _____ will need a lot of work before they can move in. (2001 全国高考)
A. they B. it C. one D. which
- (4) We didn't plan our art exhibition like that but it _____ very well. (2001 全国高考)
A. worked out B. tried out
C. went on D. carried on
- (5) The volleyball match will be put off if it _____. (1991 全国高考)
A. will rain B. rains
C. rained D. is raining
- (6) Roses need special care _____ they can live through winter. (2004 全国高考)
A. because B. so that C. even if D. as

2. 阅读理解(1995 全国高考)

Fat on human beings is distributed (分布) in different ways. Some fat people have a large stomach and no waistline—which makes them look round, rather like apples. Others are fatter below the waist, which makes them appear pear-shaped (梨形的).

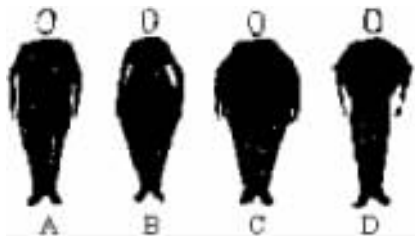
There are two types of fat : external fat (fat under the skin) and internal fat (fat inside the body wall). Doctors , who have been examining the relationship between health and fatness , have found that the “ pears ” have less internal fat , but the “ apples ” have more internal fat than external fat. This seems to be what causes the health problems.

The best treatment for fatness is to reduce the internal fat. But unfortunately it seems that dieting (节食) simply makes an apple-shaped person into a smaller apple and a pear-shaped person into a smaller pear. At the moment there is no known way of reducing the internal rather than external fat.

(1) The text is mainly about _____ .

- A. fatness and health
- B. ways to lose weight
- C. people's figures
- D. distribution of fat

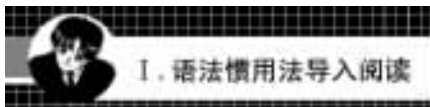
(2) Which of the following people is most likely to have health problems ?



(3) When a pear-shaped person becomes thinner , he/she loses more.

- A. internal fat than external fat
- B. external fat than internal fat
- C. fat above the waist
- D. fat below the waist

Unit 31



Smoke Gets in Your Eyes

The law school at a French university has been shamed into obeying a ban on smoking in public places—by a student with allergies (厌恶).

Political science student Marylise Presotto made an official complaint (抗议) to the dean (学院院长) at Montpellier University earlier in the year about the rampant (蔓延的) smoking in the department despite a 1991 ban on smoking in public places.

“I can't breathe ,I can't stand cigarette smoke ,” Presotto said last week. “It cuts off my respiration (呼吸).”

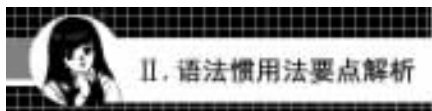
The dean of the law school , Bernard Durand , decided to take action when students returned to school after the summer vacation. The halls were watched last week to enforce the law , and Durand has threatened (威胁) violators (违规者) with disciplinary (惩戒的) action. “I see students who are headed toward a career in law , and they're smoking under a sign that says ‘ Smoking Forbidden ’ ,” said Durand.

Law students aren't the only ones who ignore (忽视) France's smoking ban. The ban forbids smoking in all enclosed , covered and collective public spaces except in specially marked smoking areas , but

those restrictions rarely are enforced.

Open defiance (违抗) of the law is common in subways or airports and many Paris restaurants do not even have nonsmoking sections.

(194 words)



1. 现在完成时用法

现在完成时由“has/have + 过去分词”构成。表示开始于过去并持续到现在(也许还会继续进行下去)的动作或状态用现在完成时,如本节选文中“ The law school at a French university has been shamed into obeying a ban on smoking in public places—by a student with allergies. ”。在未指明时间的情况下,要表示在说话之前已经完成而后果或影响至今仍存在的动作,也可用现在完成时,如本节选文中“ The halls were watched last week to enforce the law, and Durand has threatened violators with disciplinary action. ”。

2. 定语从句引导词用法

修饰名词或代词的从句,叫定语从句。引导定语从句,可以用关系代词 that(指人或物), which(一般指物), who, whom, whose(一般指人)等,也可以用关系副词 when(时间), where(地点), how(方式), why(原因)等。

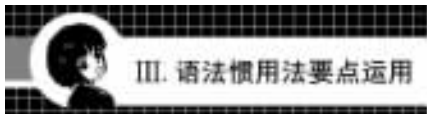
3. except 和 besides 用法

except 与 besides 意义和用法都有区别。besides 表达“除……之外,还有”概念,而 except 则表示“不包括”概念。例见本节选文。又如:

All of us passed the examination besides Tom.
汤姆和我们都通过了考试。

All of us passed the examination except Tom.

我们都通过了考试，只有汤姆没通过。



1. 单项填空

- (1) A fast food restaurant is the place _____, just as the name suggests, eating is performed quickly. (2004 上海高考)
A. which B. where C. there D. what
- (2) George Orwell, _____ was Eric Arthur, wrote many political novels and essays. (2004 北京高考)
A. the real name B. what his real name
C. his real name D. whose real name
- (3) I work in a business _____ almost everyone is waiting for a great chance. (2004 湖南高考)
A. how B. which C. where D. that
- (4) I don't mind picking up your things from the store. _____, the walk will do me good. (2004 全国高考)
A. Sooner or later B. Still
C. In time D. Besides
- (5) There were dirty marks on her trousers _____ she had wiped her hands. (2004 四川高考)
A. where B. which C. when D. that
- (6) Helen was much kinder to her youngest son than to the others, _____, of course, made the others envy him. (2004 天津高考)
A. who B. that C. what D. which
- (7) With the rapid growth of population, the city _____ in all directions in the past five years. (2003 安徽高考)
A. spreads B. has spread

C. spread

D. had spread

(8) —How long _____ at this job? (2003 北京高考)

—Since 1990.

A. were you employed

B. have you been employed

C. had you been employed

D. will you be employed

(9) —_____ the sports meet might be put off.

—Yes, it all depends on the weather. (1995 全国高考)

A. I've been told

B. I've told

C. I'm told

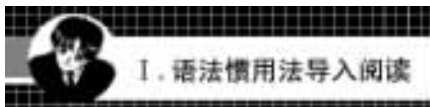
D. I told

2. 阅读理解(1996 全国高考)

Is the world really going mad? The other day I was sitting in a small restaurant 1 a quiet drink and a talk with a few friends, when it suddenly 2 me that almost everyone in the restaurant was smoking. It wasn't long 3 the whole room was filled with smoke. I asked with an apology for permission to open a window to stop myself 4 !

Nowadays air pollution is something that we hardly question any more. However, I still can't walk down the streets in any of the big cities without 5 that people are suffering from the air pollution. It is time for the government departments the world over to introduce emission (废气排出) controls on all cars and 6 the public transport system (公共交通体系) to encourage people to 7 their cars at home. A friend of mine takes flying lessons each morning and it really makes him 8 when he climbs above the smog layer (烟雾层) and looks down 9 it and thinks: "I'm breathing that!" This kind of 10 results from the bad management of resources. Waste things can, 11 should, be treated properly. Housebuilding, road construction and industrial development are all earth-moving (or earth-reducing) operations and can change the balances of 12 created over millions of years. I would like to 13 serious studies

Unit 32



At the Hospital

(Mr. Smith is a British businessman. He is in China on business. He fell down the stairs and hurt his ankle. His interpreter, Mr. Gao, helps him to see the doctor.)

Gao: Now we're in the outpatient(门诊部) department. Please sit on the bench and wait for a moment. I'll go to the registration office first.

Smith: Sorry to trouble you.

Gao: Doesn't matter. (After a while, Gao is back.) Now, let's go to the surgical department(外科) on the second floor. Take care.

Smith: Thank you.

(They get to the surgical department and find a few people waiting there. A few minutes later.)

Gao: It's our turn now.

Doctor: What do you complain of?

Smith: I fell off the stairs and sprained(扭伤) my ankle this morning.

Doctor: Could you stand to your feet and walk after the accident?

Smith: I tried to, but it hurt.

Doctor : Did you receive any treatment before you came to the hospital ?

Smith : Yes , I applied some ointment(软膏).

Doctor : It looks badly swollen (肿). Well , it could be a simple sprain. But I think to be on the safe side we ought to have it X-rayed so that we can know if there is a fracture(挫伤) in your ankle.

(Twenty minutes later.)

Doctor : The X-ray shows that there is no fracture in your ankle. It's not so serious as it seems. I'll make up a prescription(药方) for you.

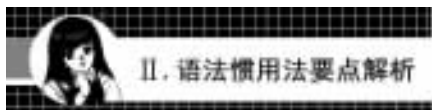
Gao : When can he get over it ?

Doctor : At least three weeks. (to Smith) I'll give you a dose of penicillin(青霉素) to prevent infection. These vitamin B and C are to build up your resistance. This kind of plaster(膏药) will keep the swelling down.

Smith : Shall I lie in bed all the time ?

Doctor : Have a good rest for at least three or five days. When you feel better , you should move the joints in your ankle from time to time.

(312 words)



1. 就诊问答基本表达法

医院就诊 , 有一些基本表达。如 :

What's the matter ? (T13)

What seems to be the trouble ? (T13)

Do you have a fever ? (T13)

How long have you felt like this ?(T13)

It's nothing serious. (T13)

Take this medicine three times a day. (T13)

You'll be all right soon. (T13)

I have a headache/cough/fever. (T13)

I feel terrible/bad/horrible/awful. (T13)

I don't feel well. (T13)

I've got a pain here. (T13)

It hurts here. (T13)

I can't sleep well. (T13)

I don't feel like eating. (T13)

2. accept 和 receive 用法

accept 与 receive 都可以表达“接受”概念，但两者有区别。accept 着重主观意志，表示经过考虑后认可或愿意接受事物、意见、建议等；而 receive 着重行为本身，只表示收到或准入等现象，不表明认同或同意接受。如：She received a gift from him, but did not accept it.

3. ought to 用法

ought to 是一个短语情态动词，表示责任、义务、劝告、责备、督促等功能，意思是“应该”。ought to 没有时态与人称变化，否定式为 ought not to 或 oughtn't to；一般疑问式为 ought S(主语)to，特殊疑问式为 Wh-ought S(主语)to...；和 always, never, often, really 等副词联合使用时，正式语体中副词置于 ought 之后，非正式文体中副词可以置于 ought 之前。如：

He ought to stay here.

You ought to see a doctor.

You oughtn't to say that.

Ought we to start now ?

What time ought we to start ?

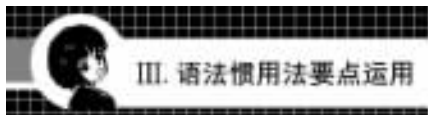
You ought always to arrive on time.

此外,情态动词 should 也可以表达“应该”的概念,与 ought to 意义很相近,可用于各种人称。如:

You should phone Tom today.

You ought to phone Tom today.

相比之下,should 更强调内在意见或主观意志,ought to 更侧重外在制约或客观限制。



1. 完形填空(2004 天津高考)

It was the district sports meet. My foot still hadn't healed(痊愈) from a(n) 1 injury.

I had 2 whether or not I should attend the meet. But there I was, 3 for the 3,000-meter run.

“Ready... set...” The gun popped and we were off. The other girls rushed 4 me. I felt 5 as I fell farther and farther behind.

“Hooray!” shouted the crowd. It was the loudest 6 I had ever heard at a meet. The first-place runner was two laps(圈) ahead of me when she crossed the finish line.

“Maybe I should 7,” I thought as I moved on. 8, I decided to keep going. During the last two laps, I ran 9 and decided not to 10 in track next year. It wouldn't be worth it, 11 my foot did heal.

When I finished, I heard a cheer — 12 than the one I'd heard earlier. I turned around and 13, the boys were preparing for their race. “They must be cheering for the boys.”

I was leaving 14 several girls came up to me. “Wow, you've got courage!” one of them told me.

“ Courage ?I just 15 a race !” I thought.

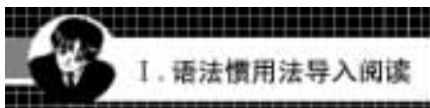
“ I would have given up on the first lap ,” said another girl. “ We were cheering for you. Did you hear us ?”

Suddenly I regained 16 . I decided to 17 track next year. I realized strength and courage aren't always 18 in medals and victories ,but in the 19 we overcome (战胜). The strongest people are not always the people who win , 20 the people who don't give up when they lose.

- (1) A. slighter B. worse C. earlier D. heavier
(2) A. expected B. supposed C. imagined D. doubted
(3) A. late B. eager C. ready D. thirsty
(4) A. from behind B. ahead of
 C. next to D. close to
(5) A. ashamed B. astonished
 C. excited D. frightened
(6) A. cheer B. shout C. cry D. noise
(7) A. slow down B. drop out
 C. go on D. speed up
(8) A. Therefore B. Otherwise
 C. Besides D. However
(9) A. with delight B. with fear
 C. in pain D. in advance
(10) A. play B. arrive C. race D. attend
(11) A. even if B. only if C. unless D. until
(12) A. weaker B. longer C. lower D. louder
(13) A. well enough B. sure enough
 C. surprisingly enough D. strangely enough
(14) A. while B. when C. as D. since
(15) A. finished B. won C. passed D. lost
(16) A. cheer B. hope

- C. interest
(17) A. hold on
C. begin with
- D. experience
B. turn to
D. stick with
- (18) A. measured
C. tested
- B. praised
D. increased
- (19) A. sadness
C. diseases
- B. struggles
D. tiredness
- (20) A. or B. nor C. and D. but

Unit 33

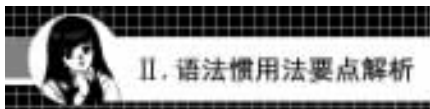


A Traffic Accident

A terrible traffic accident happened in a downtown street last Friday. A speeding truck knocked a car over at the first turning of the main street. As a result, five people were killed, and several injured. It was said the truck driver had drunk a lot of beer before driving. While driving, he felt sick and couldn't control the truck. The accident made all traffic stop for an hour and caused the damage of over one million Yuan.

The local government warned all the people to learn a lesson from the accident.

(92 words)



1. happen, occur 和 take place 用法

《英语课程标准》词汇表和习惯用语表达有 happen, occur 和 take place。它们都可以表达“发生”的意思,都没有被动态,但具体意义和用法有区别。首先, happen 和 occur 都指事件的偶然发生或未经筹划地出现,而 take place 指有计划的事(按计划或预期)发生。其次, happen 较为口语化, occur 更加正式。再次, happen to sb/sth, 表示某种体验或命运等落到某人或某物上,

occur to sb 表示某事物或想法出现在某人心中。例如：

What time did the accident happen ?

The accident occurred about midnight.

I don't know what happened to him.

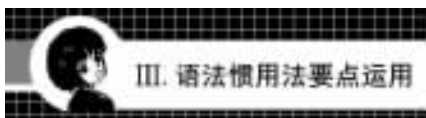
A good idea occurred to me.

2. when , while , if , though 从句省略用法

由 when , while , if , though 等连词引导的状语从句中，经常可以省略从句主语与助动词或系动词。例如：

When (I was) coming here , I saw him walking along the street.

I'll come here if (it is) necessary.



1. 单项填空

(1) _____ in the queue for half an hour , Tom suddenly realized that he had left his wallet at home. (2004 北京高考)

A. To wait

B. Have waited

C. Having waited

D. To have waited

(2) Generally speaking , _____ according to the directions , the drug has no side effect. (2003 上海高考)

A. when taking

B. when taken

C. when to take

D. when to be taken

(3) When flint _____ to the market , these products enjoyed great success. (2004 四川高考)

A. introducing

B. introduced

C. introduce

D. being introduced

(4) _____ a reply , he decided to write again. (1992 全国高考)

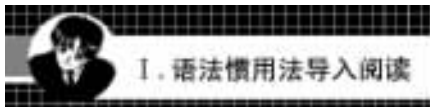
A. Not receiving

B. Receiving not

C. Not having received

D. Having not received

Unit 34



Weather

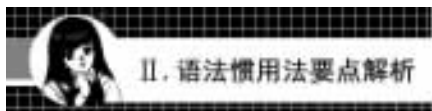
One thing is for certain, British people love talking about the weather. Maybe it's because it changes so often. Most people love hot weather and even in Britain, it can be very hot sometimes! When there is a period of very hot weather, people call it a heat wave. Hot days can also be described as boiling or baking hot. These are also called dog-days(三伏天). If there is a period of very hot weather late in the summer or in the autumn, we call this an Indian summer(小阳春).

If you think the weather is going to stay fine—stay good—don't be deceived(欺骗)! It can change very quickly, or be changeable(易变的). If it starts spitting, raindrops will be falling only occasionally, but drizzle(毛毛雨)—very light rain—is sure to follow. A shower probably will not last very long, but it could be quite heavy—a downpour(大雨) for example. A deluge(倾盆大雨) is very heavy rain, when it's pouring or bucketing down—raining very hard. If it's raining cats and dogs, then I hope you're inside somewhere, as it will be raining very hard!

As we are now in November, the weather in Britain is changing again. There is a nip(寒气) in the air—a coldness you can feel on your face—and it is chilly, meaning cold. Jack Frost might come visiting. He is the fictional character associated with frosty weather.

Frost is frozen dew. A cold snap(天气突变) or spell is a short period of very bitter, cold weather, and winter often brings inclement(严寒的) weather, a formal word for unpleasantly cold or stormy conditions. If you are not looking forward to the long winter ahead, maybe you could remember this saying by John Ruskin, an English writer and artist, "There is no such thing as bad weather, only different kinds of good weather."

(302 words)



1. V-ing P 与 VP 宾语用法

V-ing P 结构和 to VP 结构都可能充当宾语,在很多情况下,两者意义有差别。但是,在 begin, can't bear, continue, like, love, prefer, start 等动词之后,可接 V-ing 结构或 to VP 结构作宾语,意义差别不是很大。如表示经常性的一般行为,用 V-ing 结构作宾语为多;如表示某个或某次具体的动作,则用 to VP 结构做宾语为多。如:

I don't like watching television.

I'd like to swim today.

另外,还要注意,部分动词或动词词组只能用 V-ing P 结构做宾语,而不能接 to VP 结构做宾语。这些动词是 admit, acknowledge, appreciate, avoid, cannot help, cannot resist, cannot stand, consider, delay, dislike, don't mind, enjoy, escape, excuse, fancy, favor, finish, forgive, give up, keep (on), look forward to, mind, miss, pardon, prevent, put off, risk, suggest, set about 等。

2. 状语从句及引导词用法

在句中充当状语的句子是状语从句。状语从句由引导词引

导，《英语课程标准》词汇表中收入的可以引导状语从句的词有 where, wherever(地点状语从句); as, (just) as... so... , as if, as though(方式状语从句); because, since, as, for(原因状语从句); that, so that, in order that, lest, for fear that, in case(目的状语从句); so... that, that 或 such... that(结果状语从句); if, unless, as/so long as, suppose(条件状语从句); though, although, as, even if, however, whatever, whoever, no matter how/what/which/when/where/who(让步状语从句); when, as, while, before, after, since, till, until, as soon as, the moment, no sooner than, hardly... when(时间状语从句); as... as, not so as, more... than, the... the...(比较状语从句)。

3. 谈论天气基本表达法

熟悉谈论天气的一些基本表达法。如：

What's the weather like today?(T16)

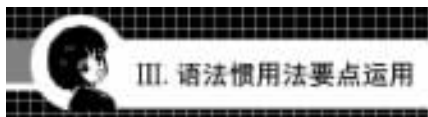
How's the weather in Beijing?(T16)

What a cold/hot day today!(T16)

It's a nice/fine/beautiful/horrible day today. (T16)

It's sunny/cloudy/windy/rainy/snowy/foggy. (T16)

It's getting cool/cold/warm/hot. (T16)



1. 根据下列句子所给单词的首字母，在句子空白处填上各单词的正确形式，每空只写一词。

(1) If there is a period of very hot weather late in the summer or in the autumn, we call this an I _____.

(2) If it d _____, you needn't bring an umbrella with you.

(3) As we are now in November, the weather in Britain is c _____ again.

(4) As a famous film star , letters come in s _____ to him.

(5) It is such a c _____ morning. The cold seemed to go right into the bones.

2. 短文改错(2002 全国高考)

此题要求你对一段文章改错。先对每一行作出判断是对还是错。如果是对的,在该行右边横线上画一个勾(√);如果有错误(每行不会多于一个错误),则按情况改错如下:

此行多一个词,把多余的词用斜线(\)划掉,在该行右边横线上写出该词,并用斜线划掉。

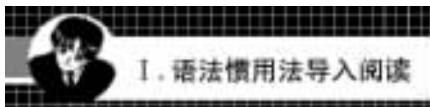
此行缺一个词:在缺词处加一个漏字符号(∧),在该行右边横线上写出该加的词。

此行错一个词:在错的词下划一横线,在该行右边横线上写出改正后的词。

注意:原行没有错的不要改。

Last week my parents and I took a two-day trip to Emei Mountain in Sichuan. As everyone knows , it's famous 1 _____ mountain with all kinds of plants and animals. The weather 2 _____ was fine. It was almost noon we arrived at the foot of 3 _____ the mountain. The three of them were very excited. As we 4 _____ climbed the mountain , we fed monkeys , visiting temples 5 _____ and told stories. On the way up I was busy taking picture 6 _____ since the scenery was so beautiful. The time passes quickly. 7 _____ Evening came down. We spent the night in a hotel at the top 8 _____ of the mountain. The food was expensive and the service was 9 _____ Good. I was so tired that I fell asleep at the moment my 10 _____ head touched the pillow.

Unit 35

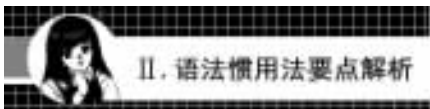


What is a Hurricane(飓风)?

A hurricane is a tropical(热带的) storm with winds that have reached a constant speed of at least 74 miles per hour in the North Atlantic Ocean, Caribbean Sea, or Gulf of Mexico. A hurricane's winds blow in a large spiral(螺旋形) around a relatively calm center of extremely low pressure known as the eye of the storm. Around the rim(边缘) of the eye, winds may gust(吹狂风) to more than 200 miles per hour. The eye of a storm is usually 20 to 30 miles wide and may extend over 400 miles. The entire storm can be up to 340 miles in diameter(直径), dominating the ocean surface and lower atmosphere for thousands of square miles.

As a hurricane approaches, the skies will begin to darken and winds will grow in strength. As a hurricane nears land, it can bring torrential(猛烈的) rains, high winds, and storm surges. A single hurricane can last for more than 2 weeks over open waters and can run a path across the entire length of the eastern seaboard. August and September are peak months during the hurricane season that lasts from June 1 through November 30.

(188 words)



1. 介词 with 用法

介词 with 有“关于”、“带有”、“以”、“和”、“用”、“有”等意义。可以表示共同，例见本节选文。还可表示伴随。如：Temperatures vary with the time of the year. 表示客体，如：His parents are very strict with him. 表示工具、手段。如：I dug the field with a pick. 表示从属。如：I bought a book with a lot of pictures in it. 表示让步，如：With all his merits, he was not proud. 表示原因，如：She is shivering with cold. 表示态度或方法。如：Read the book with care. 在很多场合，with 反义词是 without，参见 13.1 “without 用法”条。

2. 情态动词 can 的用法

情态动词 can，意义为“能(够)”、“可能”、“可以”，只有 can (现在时)和 could(过去时)两种形式，可用于一切人称和单、复数。因为 can 只有 can(现在时)和 could(过去时)两种形式，如需用其他时态表达“能(够)”等概念，一般要用 be able to。can 的否定式为 cannot 或 can't；be able to 的反义是 be unable to。如：

He can ride a bike. (T25)

He's able to pass the math exam. (T25)

He can't swim. (T25)

He's unable to walk any more. (T25)

Can you come tomorrow?

Will you be able to come tomorrow?

3. over 和 across 用法

介词 over 和 across 都可以表达“从一边到另一边”的概念，但两者用法存在差别。over 包含从上方或上空越过某物或翻过某物之意，across 包含从面上越过或掠过之意；across 用于较小距离，

over 用于较大距离。因此，有 across the street 和 over the mountain 的搭配；也有 across the river, over the lake 和 over the sea 的搭配。怎么用这两个介词，一要看它们和动词的搭配，二要看想表达什么意义。如：

He walked across the square.

I looked over the square.

One swam across the river.

The other flew over the river.

4. begin V-ing P 和 begin to VP 用法

begin 之后，可以接 V-ing P 为宾语，也可以接 to VP 为宾语，但两种形式有意义和习惯差别。

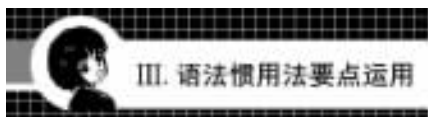
(1) 表示某项长期活动或开始某种习惯时，使用 V-ing P 结构。如：How old were you when you first began playing the piano?

(2) 表示某项即拟采取的或即拟开始的活动，用 to VP 结构。如：He began to run as fast as he could.

(3) begin 或 start 用进行时态，后面接 to VP 结构。如：I was beginning to get angry.

(4) 在 begin 或 start 后接 know, think, understand, realize 这类动词时，这类动词用 to VP 结构。如：I begin to understand the truth.

(5) begin 以物做主语时，宾语用 to VP 结构。如：The ice began to melt.



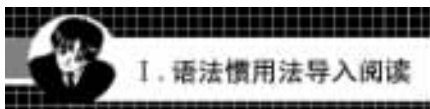
1. 单项填空

(1) You might just as well tell the manufacturer that male customers _____ not like the design of the furniture. (2004 上海高考)

- A. must B. shall C. may D. need

- (2) —I don't mind telling you what I know.
—You _____. I'm not asking you for it. (2004 江苏高考)
A. mustn't B. may not C. can't D. needn't
- (3) You _____ be tired—you've only been working for an hour.
(2004 四川高考)
A. must not B. won't
C. can't D. may not
- (4) A left-luggage office is a place where bags _____ be left for a short time , especially at a railway station. (2003 全国高考)
A. should B. can C. must D. will
- (5) How _____ you say that you really understand the whole story if you have covered only part of the article ? (2003 上海高考)
A. can B. must C. need D. may
2. 天气变化往往会影响人们外出旅游的计划，请以 The Importance of Weather in Traveling 为题写一篇 100 字左右的英文短文。

Unit 36



Going to a Movie

George : What did you think about the movie ?

Heather : Well . . . I think this Star Wars episode (一段情节) is an excellent piece of work. But not as good as the previous ones.

George : Really ? I don't agree. This Star Wars episode was incredible (难以置信的) !

Heather : Why do you think so ?

George : One of the most spectacular (引人注目的) things about it is the special effects.

Heather : You're right. The special effects (特技) were amazing ! And they also created so many fantastic settings and otherworldly (超俗的) costumes , weapons and creatures.

George : And the same Star Wars theme song is still used for this movie.

Heather : Yeah ! It reminds me of the previous Star Wars scenes.

George : I thought the overall (整体的) plot of the movie was very interesting. But I don't think the character development was that strong. Do you think that had anything to do with the casting of the movie ?

Heather : No , the casting is great , the actors were excellent. They just didn't have a lot of funny or meaningful dialogue. The

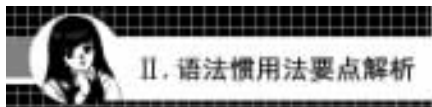
writing was a little weak.

George : Well , maybe , but I like the little kid who played young Anakin Skywalker. I can't imagine anyone else playing that role.

Heather : I liked him too. He's so cute ! You know , even though I was slightly disappointed , I can't wait for the next episode.

George : I hope so , too.

(220 words)



1. 同级比较否定式

形容词或副词同级比较，形式一般是 as + Adj. / Adv. + as。

如：

My ruler is as long as yours.

I can run as fast as you can.

同级比较的否定式一般是 not so (as) + Adj. / Adv. + as，含义相当于汉语“……和……不一样”，常被译做“……不如……”或“……没有……”。如：

This book is not as/so interesting as that one.

He cannot run so/as fast as you.

2. think 用法

动词 think 是一个很常见的高频词，它的用法很复杂，要注意以下各点：

(1) 表达持有观点或意见时，不用进行时。如：

I am thinking that the Tigers will win the game. (×)

I think that the Tigers will win the game. (√)

(2) 表达考虑做某事时，通常不和 to VP 结构连用，而和 V-ing P 结构连用。如：

I'm thinking to study English. (×)

I'm thinking of studying English. (✓)

(3) 和宾语从句连用时，宾语从句否定式通常前移到 think 上。如：

I think (that) he will not come. → I don't think (that) he will come.

I think the character development was not that strong. → I don't think the character development was that strong.

此处，前移是口语说法，不作移动是正式规范英语，但国内，特别是各级学校的英语考试都把不移动当成错误用法。

(4) 可以引导直接问句，通常不引导间接问句，遇间接问句，用 wonder 替代。如：

I thought, "Will he come?"

I was thinking whether/if he would come. (×)

I was wondering whether/if he would come. (✓)

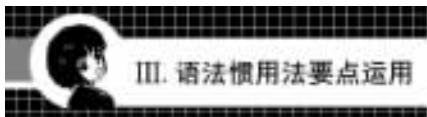
3. imagine 用法

imagine 表达想象和设想等意思。主要用法有三种：imagine + NP；imagine + 从句；imagine + V-ing P。注意，表达想象做某事不可用 imagine + to VP，只能用 imagine + V-ing P。例见本节选文。又如：

He imagined life in Britain.

He imagined that he was living in Britain.

He imagined living in Britain.



1. 书面表达(2001 北京高考)

假定你是李华，你所在的学校拟在下个月举办美国电影节(American Film Festival)。请你根据以下要点给你的美国朋友 Peter 写一封短信，邀请他给学生做一次讲座。信的主要内容包

括：

讲座目的：使学生对美国电影有所了解；

讲座内容：简要介绍美国电影(制片)业的历史；

讲座时间：1 小时 30 分钟左右。

注意：

(1) 可以适当增加细节，使结构完整；

(2) 词数 100 左右。

2. 阅读理解(2000 春季高考)

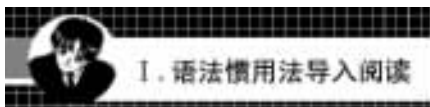
McGill Comedy Club Important meeting today. Discussions on putting on Blazing Saddles. Union room 302, 3 ~ 4 pm. New members (both actors and non-actors, living and dead) are welcome.	History Students' Association Prof. Michael Cross of Dalhousie University will be speaking on "Unskilled Labors on Rivers and Canals in Upper Canada, 1820 ~ 1850: The Beginnings of Class Struggle," at 10 am in Leacock 230.	Design Mirror Sale All types and sizes of design mirrors priced to please. Sale today in Union room 108.
McGill Teaching Assistants' Association A general meeting, for all the TAs, will be held at 4 pm in Leacock 116.	Women's Union Important General Meeting at 6 pm, Union room 423. Speaker on "Importance of deciding basic goals of the Women's Union." Everyone, old, new and those interested, please attend.	
Film Society Last meeting of the term for all members. All managers are required to be present. 6:00 sharp, Union room 434.	Canadian University Students Overseas CUSO presents "Guess Who's Coming to Breakfast" at 7 pm, Newman Center, 3484 Peel. Find out about CUSO here and overseas. Everyone welcome.	

(1) Where can you probably find this text?

A. In a school magazine.

- B. In a national paper.
 - C. In a guide book.
 - D. In a university daily newspaper.
- (2) If you are interested in arts , where would you go for a visit ?
- A. Leacock 116.
 - B. Union room 423.
 - C. Union room 108.
 - D. Newman Centre ,3484 Peel.
- (3) Which of the following is the name of a play ?
- A. Blazing Saddles.
 - B. Guess Who's Coming to Breakfast.
 - C. Importance of deciding basic goals of the Women's Union.
 - D. Unskilled Labours on Rivers and Canals in Upper Canada ,
1820 ~ 1850.

Unit 37



A Brief History of Rock “n” Roll

Rock “n” roll started in the United States with black musicians , the great rhythm(节奏) “n” blues players : Muddy Waters , John Lee Hooker and Chuck Berry.

Forty years ago black music and white music were two completely separate things. Chuck Berry was the first black musician to cross the barrier(界线) and sell records to both black and white young people. His songs were about the lives of teenagers—all teenagers. In 1958 he had a big hit with Sweet Little Sixteen.

In the 1960s the style of the musicians changed a lot. Before this time singers used to dress smartly and have short hair. Now there were groups , not solo singers. And they started to wear crazy clothes and their hair got longer and longer.

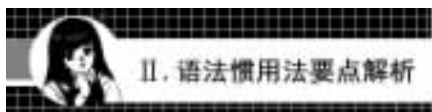
By 1968 groups were all in “hippie” gear(嬉皮道具) , the name “hippie” having developed from the word “hip” (originally “hep”) became popular among the beatniks of a decade earlier. The guitar became as important as the voice : Jimi Hendrix and Eric Clapton were guitarists more than singers.

In the 1970s , rock went in two different directions. On the soft side , Elton John , Rod Stewart and the Swedish group Abba became very popular with people of all ages. On the hard side , The Sex Pistols , The Stranglers , Siouxsie and the Banshees , and a few other bands started to play loud , violent music called “ Punk ”. Punk(庞克音乐) was also important as a fashion in clothes and hair. The punk “ look ” is still around today , mostly , for obvious reasons , in the big cities.

Something new and different arrived in 1975. It came from Jamaica in the Caribbean. It had a heavy dance beat , but was not too fast and was called “ reggae ” , (perhaps from the word “ ragged ” , as in dirty) and its superstar was Bob Marley. Reggae was a mix of rock , African , and South American music. It had a message of peace and optimism(乐观).

Today there are a number of different popular music styles—pop , heavy metal , rap , dance , indie. But they all originate from good old rock “ n ” roll.

(341 words)



1. 年代表示法

英语表示年代 , 通常说 the tens , the twenties , the thirties , . . . the nineties。和世纪连用 , 通常有两种形式 , 即 the nineteen nineties , the eighteen fifties , . . . , 或 the nineties of the twentieth century , the fifties of the nineteenth century。在书面文字中 , 这些表达法可简写为阿拉伯数字 , 如 : the 10s , the 20s , the 30s , . . .

the 90s , the 1990s , the 1850s , the 90s of the 20th century , the 50s of the 19th century.

2. dress , wear 和 put on 意义和用法

dress , wear 和 put on 都可表达“穿”的概念，但意义和用法有区别。dress 强调衣着结果。如：She is dressing. Please wait a moment. dress 可以用做不及物动词，也可以用做及物动词，但宾语是人，不是衣服。如：

She dressed the children.

The boys are well dressed.

put on 强调穿衣的动作。如：

Put on your raincoat. It's raining outside.

wear 强调衣着状态。如：

She is always wearing a red skirt.

3. 表示数量概念的限定词的用法

《英语课程标准》中收录有很多表示数量概念的词或短语。为方便记忆，现将它们的用法列表如下：

(1)与不可数名词搭配	(2)与复数可数名词搭配	(3)与不可数名词或复数可数名词搭配
much	many	more
(a) little	(a) few	(the) most
less	fewer	plenty of
(the) least	(the) fewest	a lot of
a great deal of	a great many of	lots of
a great amount of	a (great) number of	enough
	a good many of	
	several	
	millions of	

4. cross 和 across 用法

英语单词 cross 和 across 都有“越过”、“穿过”的意思。cross 是及物动词，直接接名词作宾语。如：

We can't cross that river ; it is too deep.

Look right and left before you cross the street.

across 是介词，常跟在 walk , swim , ride , go , run 等动词后面。如：

Be careful when you walk across the street.

He swam across the river this morning.

5. something 等复合不定代词修饰语

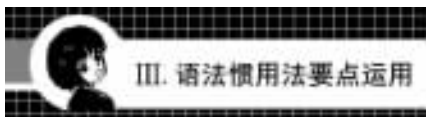
something , everything , anything 和 nothing 等复合不定代词，形容词修饰语要后置。如：

I have something important to tell you.

Is there anything new in that book ?

Anyone drunk is not allowed to drive.

任何喝醉酒的人都不准开车。



1. 书面表达(2000 北京高考)

为了丰富外国留学生的生活，你校学生会将举办一次音乐周活动。请你以组织者的身份写一个书面通知。有关内容如下：

时间：5 月第 1 周

活动：1. 演唱歌曲：流行歌曲

2. 器乐演奏：古曲和民间音乐

3. 音乐比赛：听歌曲片断，然后猜出处

地点：届时通知

参加者请于 4 月 20 日前报名。

注意：

(1) 书面通知应写成一篇连贯的短文；

(2) 可以适当增减细节；

(3) 词数 100 左右；

(4) 通知格式已为你写好；

(5) 生词：古典 classical 民间 folk 乐器 musical instruments

比赛 contest

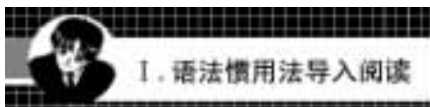
April 10 ,2000

Dear students ,

Come to the great fun !

Students Union

Unit 38



Outdoor and Indoor Games

Alan : You say you like watching and playing cricket(板球) , John.

Do you play any other outdoor games ?

John : No , I don't. But I like watching tennis. I go to Wimbledon every year to watch the championships , and when I can't , I follow up the matches on television. It's very exciting. But I think I prefer games where it's the team work rather than the individual performance that counts. Don't you ?

Alan : Well , yes. That's why I like football so much. But I also like games like golf and lawn tennis in which individuals or couples match their skill. Tennis is a marvelous game to watch. However , like you , I prefer watching team games.

John : What about indoor games ? Do you play any ? I used to be quite good at billiards(撞球).

Alan : No. I don't play billiards or table-tennis or badminton. I don't think I'm the type for indoor games. I like to be out in the open air.

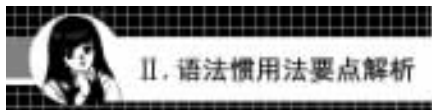
John : But surely you like basketball ! It's a marvelous (绝妙的)

indoor game.

Alan : Yes , it is. I quite like watching it , but I've never wanted to play it.

John : The only indoor game I've never wanted to play is cards. Playing cards bores me to death !

(203 words)



1. which 和 whom 做介词宾语

which 和 whom 在从句中做介词宾语时，介词一般可以放在 which 或 whom 之前，也可放在相关动词之后。含有介词的短语动词中的介词通常只能放在原来位置上，而不能拆开来放在 which 或 whom 之前。如：

This is the dictionary which you are looking for.

The pen with which she is writing is very expensive.

而某些在从句中充当时间、地点或原因状语的“介词 + which”结构可以同 when 或 where 互换。如：

This is the house in which I lived five years ago. = This is the house where I lived five years ago.

2. watch , look at , see 用法

watch , look 和 see 都可以表达“看”的概念，但意义和用法有差别。see 最常用，强调看的结果，即或因无意或因观察而看到某人某事。例如：I happened to see the suspect escaping down a side-street. watch 强调看的过程，或强调注意力的投入，不注重结果或动作。watch 可以用作名词，并构成 keep a close watch on 和 keep watch for 等短语；还可以衍生形容词 watchful。例如：He

potential (潜力), and I became captain of my 1. That was before all the fun was taken out of 2.

At first, everyone on the team got 3 playing time. Then the team moved up to the top division after winning all its games, and the 4 started. Some parents, who had paid the coach extra so their daughters could have 5 one-on-one training, got angry when she didn't give them more playing time in our 6. The coach was replaced.

The new coach, however, took all the fun out of the game: All we did during practice was 7. I always wished to God that it would rain so we would not have the 8. Of course, all teams run drills; they are 9. But we ran so much that, afterwards, we had trouble 10. Younger people shouldn't be doing exercises 11 for 18-year-olds.

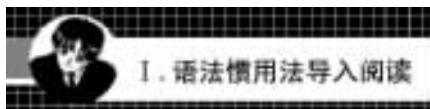
I was very thin 12 I started football, but as a member of this team I wouldn't eat much, because I was afraid of being too 13 to run. I feared making mistakes, and the added pressure caused me to make more than my usual 14.

Is all this pressure necessary? I 15 up leaving the football team. Four other girls did the same, and two of them stopped playing football completely. That's 16, because they had so much potential. They were just burned-out with all the pressure they 17 from the coach or their parents.

I continued playing football at school and 18 my love for it. I joined a private team coached by my school coach. When I started playing 19 him, he told me I needed to relax because I looked nervous. After I 20 down, I played better. When you enjoy something, it's a lot easier to do it well.

- (1) A. class B. club C. team D. board
- (2) A. playing B. living C. learning D. working
- (3) A. great B. equal C. right D. extra
- (4) A. business B. struggle
C. attempt D. pressure
- (5) A. free B. private C. good D. basic
- (6) A. matches B. courses
C. lessons D. programs
- (7) A. jump B. play C. run D. shoot
- (8) A. duty B. meeting C. operation D. training
- (9) A. necessary B. boring
C. scientific D. practical
- (10) A. speaking B. moving
C. sleeping D. breathing
- (11) A. used B. intended
C. made D. described
- (12) A. till B. since C. before D. because
- (13) A. full B. tired C. lazy D. big
- (14) A. size B. share C. space D. state
- (15) A. gave B. kept C. ended D. picked
- (16) A. sad B. shameful C. silly D. serious
- (17) A. received B. suffered C. brought D. felt
- (18) A. reconsidered B. rediscovered
C. re-formed D. replaced
- (19) A. at B. by C. for D. around
- (20) A. fell B. stepped C. slowed D. calmed

Unit 39



The Olympic Games

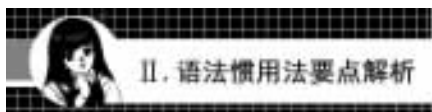
The original Olympics took place nearly 3000 years ago , in the year 776 BC. Many different sports were played , including boxing , running , throwing the discus(铁饼) , though they were fewer sports involved(参加) than in the modern Olympics. People came from all over Greece to watch the Games beneath Mount Olympus , and even cities or states that were fighting wars stopped them for the duration (期间) of the games.

The Games were held every five years , until they were banned by the Romans in AD 393. They continued for such a long time because people believed in the philosophy behind the Olympics : the idea that a healthy body produced a healthy mind , and that the spirit of competition in sport and games was preferable to the competition that caused wars.

After the Romans stopped the Olympics , the concept was lost for nearly 1500 years , until in 1894. Baron Pierre de Conbertin had an idea. He thought it would be possible to start the Games again , inviting sportsmen from different countries , to create a spirit of peace and healthy competition. Many others fell this was worthwhile , and

on April 6, 1896 the first new Olympics were held in Greece. Only 50,000 people saw these Games, but the rest of the world soon became enthusiastic(热心的), and from 1900 the Games were held every four years in a different country. Only three Olympics were cancelled because of war—1916, 1940, and 1944.

(236 words)



1. 不用被动语态的动词

英语中,有相当多的动词不用被动语态。大致归纳如下。

(1) 不及物动词及某些短语动词无被动语态,如文中的“The original Olympics took place nearly 3000 years ago, in the year 776 BC.”。此类动词或短语动词还有: appear, die, disappear, end (vi. 结束), fail, happen, last, lie, remain, sit, spread, stand, break out, come true, fall asleep, keep silence, lose heart, take place 等。

(2) 不能用于被动语态的及物动词或短语动词: fit, have, hold, marry, own, wish, cost, notice, watch, agree with, arrive at/in, shake hands with, succeed in, suffer from, happen to, take part in, walk into, belong to 等。如: Your story agrees with what had already been heard.

(3) 系动词无被动语态。如: appear, be become, fall, feel, get, grow, keep, look, remain, seem, smell, sound, stay, taste, turn 等。

(4) 带同源宾语的及物动词、反身代词、相互代词,不能用于被动语态,如: die, dream, live 等。例如: She dreamed a bad

dream last night. 通常不说 A dream was dreamed last night.

(5) 以不定式做宾语的动词很少转型为被动语态。我们常说 “She likes to swim.” 通常不说 “To swim is liked by her.”

2. 时间频度表示法

英语中，表示时间频率，最常见的方式有：

(1) “per + 时间单位名词”，如 per hour, per day, per week 等；

(2) “every + 时间单位名词”，如：every day, every week, every year 等；

(3) “every + 数词 + 时间单位名词(复数)”，如：every ten minutes, every five days 等；

(4) “频率短语 + a + 时间单位名词”，如：once a week, twice a month, five times a year 等。例见本节选文。又如：

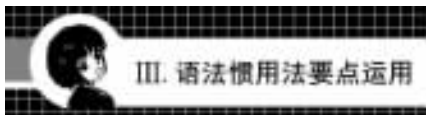
The buses go every fifteen minutes.

I go to the movie once a week.

3. such 和 so 用法

such 是形容词，修饰名词或名词词组；so 是副词，修饰形容词或副词，so 还可与表示数量的形容词 many, few, much, little 连用，形成固定搭配。such 和 so 的常见搭配总结如下。

so + Adj.	such + a(n) + N
so + Adj. + a(n) + N	such + a + Adj. + N
so + Adj. + N(复数)	such + N(复数)
so + Adj. + N(不可数)	such + N(不可数)
so foolish	such a fool
so nice a flower	such a nice flower
so many/few flowers	such nice flowers
so much/little money	such rapid progress
so many people	such a lot of people



1. 改错(2003 安徽高考)

短文改错(共 10 小题;每小题 1 分,满分 10 分)

此题要求改正所给短文中的错误。对标有题号的每一行作出判断,在该行右边横线上画一个勾(√);如有错误(每行只有一个错误),则按下列情况改正。

该行多一个词:把多余的词用斜线(\)划掉,在该行右边横线上写出该词,并用斜线划掉。

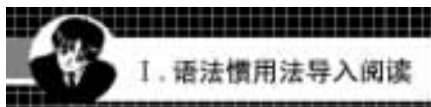
该行缺一个词:在缺词处加上一个漏字符号(∧),在该行右边横线上写出该加的词。

该行错一个词:在错词下划一横线,在该行右边横线上写出改正后的词。

注意:原行没有错的不要改。

I'm the captain of our school team so with my 1 _____
fellow players we've won several games. There 2 _____
will an important game next month. But one of the 3 _____
best players in our team told me just then that he 4 _____
wouldn't play basketball once more. His parents 5 _____
asked him to spend in more time preparing for the 6 _____
college entrance examination. I feel sorry to him. 7 _____
But his parents think go to college is more important 8 _____
than playing sports and college was the only place 9 _____
for a smart boy like his son. So my friend had no
choice. He wanted to make his parents happy. 10 _____

Unit 40



Dancing

Moving the body in rhythms to show how a person feels , have a good time , or tell a story is one of man's oldest habits. Many dances are magical or religious. Some dances are performed when special things are happening.

There were two main kinds of dances in Europe , court dances and folk dances. Court dances were those of the upper class. They were usually slow and graceful , and people learned them from teachers. Folk dances were those of farmers and other ordinary people. Sometimes a good folk dance was turned into a court dance. The waltz(华尔兹舞) is an example.

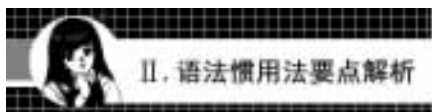
Over the centuries , the court dances came and went. Many were fashionable for only a few years , while others lasted more than a century. The branle , gavotte(加伏特舞) , minuet (小步舞曲) , and waltz are four of the famous ones. Some dance rhythms were often used in music not intended for dancing , such as symphonies(交响乐). The waltz became fashionable about 150 years ago , and new waltzes are still being written. Many are not for dancing , but only for

listening.

Folk dances stay in fashion longer, and are often livelier, than the court dances. The Czech polka(波尔卡舞), the Polish mazurka, and the English country dance are folk dances that became court dances too. The English Morris dance, the Spanish flamenco(西班牙的吉卜赛舞), and the Scottish reel never became court dances but are famous folk dances all the same.

Modern ballroom dances, like the old court dances, are carefully taught rather than naturally learned as folk dances are. But they still borrow from folk dances, such as the South American rhumba(伦巴舞) and the tango.

(266 words)



1. V-ing P 结构用法

V-ing P 结构,或称动词的-ing 形式,从性质上讲,可以相当于名词、形容词、副词,因此可以在句中充当主语、表语、定语、宾语补足语和状语。例见本节选文。又如:

Playing basketball is my favorite sport.

Seeing is believing.

2. 引导词 while 用法

引导词 while 引导状语从句,有两种意义与用法。一是表达时间概念,表示主句动作发生在从句动作期间,或主句与从句动作同步发生;二是表达对比或反差概念,表示主句与从句情况相反。例见本节选文。又如:

He fell asleep while he was watching TV.

While the mothers were talking , their children were playing on the square.

I like tea while he prefers coffee.

3. other 用法

other 可以用做形容词 , 也可以用做代词。用作形容词时 , 没有复数变化。如 :

I decide to visit some other places this summer.

Did you see other people ?

用作代词时 , other 有复数变化。the other 表示两者中的“另一个” , others 表示众多(人或事)中的“另一些” , the others 表示“其余的人或事”。例见本节选文。又如 :

Some people came by car , others came on foot.

I went swimming while the others played basketball.

4. while , when , as 用法比较

as , when 引导带短暂性动作动词的从句。如 : Just as I stopped my car , a man came up to me. 从句动作发生于主句动作之前 , 只能用 when 引导这个从句 , 不可用 as 或 while。如 : When you have finished your work , you may have a rest. 从句表示“随时间推移”的概念时 , 引导词只能用 as , 不用 when 或 while。如 : As the day went on , the weather got worse. while 则强调主句与从句动作同时发生 , 并含有对比或反差意图。如 : I was doing my homework while my sister was dancing.

5. not...but...用法

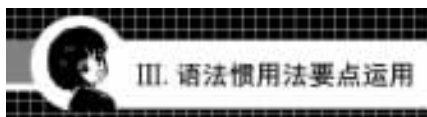
not...but...表达“不是.....而是.....”的概念 , 是平级平衡结构。not 和 but 后接的词或短语或从句通常是平级与平衡的。例见本节选文。又如 :

They were not the bones of an animal , but (the bones) of a human being.

He is good not at English , but at mathematics.

She is good , not because she has a talent , but because she is beautiful.

Our pride is not that we have more ideas , but that our ideas are better.



1. 单项选择

(1) I do every single bit of housework _____ my husband Bob just does the dishes now and then. (2004 广西高考)

A. since B. while C. when D. as

(2) I got the story from Tom and _____ people who had worked with him. (2004 天津高考)

A. every other B. many others
C. some other D. other than

(3) The manager , _____ his factory's products were poor in quality , decided to give his workers further training. (2003 安徽高考)

A. knowing B. known
C. to know D. being known

(4) The radio is almost _____ as _____.

A. same , her B. same , hers
C. the same , her D. the same , hers

2. 根据对话内容 , 从对话后的选项中选出能填入空白处的最佳选项。选项中有两项为多余选项。

(Mike is picking up the phone when Alice enters.)

Alice : Are you phoning Linda ?

Mike : Yes. But how do you know ?

Alice : 1

Mike : What did they say ?

Alice : 2

Mike : What happened ?

Alice : 3 She had to go and take his place for three days.

Mike : That's too bad.

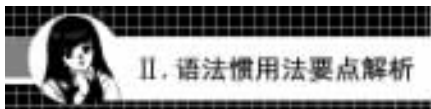
Alice : 4

Mike : You see , I had arranged(安排)for us to have dinner with a friend tonight.

Alice : 5

Mike : Sure , why not ?

- A. Isn't she your girlfriend ?
- B. They said she had left for London.
- C. What's the problem ?
- D. Her office left you a message.
- E. Why not invite me , then ?
- F. They said they had phoned Linda.
- G. The manager at their office had suddenly fallen ill.



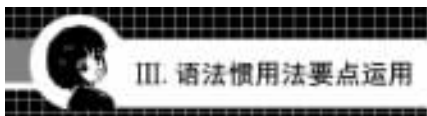
II. 语法惯用法要点解析

1. V-ed P 充当表语

本节选文中“he got nailed with an infrared speed detector”中的“nailed”用作表语。V-ed P 结构或动词的-ed 形式作表语时，只是说明主语的状态，不同于被动语态。试比较：His homework was done by his sister. (被动语态) His homework is well done. (表语)

2. be about to + VP

be about to + VP 表示即将做某事。注意：be about to VP 不能与 tomorrow, next week 等表示明确将来时的时间状语连用。例如：She is about to leave for Paris.



III. 语法惯用法要点运用

1. 单项填空

- (1) She's upstairs _____ letters. (1991 全国高考)
A. writes B. is writing C. write D. writing
- (2) The research is so designed that once _____ nothing can be done to change it. (2002 全国高考)
A. begins B. having begun
C. beginning D. begun
- (3) As we joined the big crowd I got _____ from my friends.
(2001 全国高考)
A. separated B. spared C. lost D. missed
- (4) Cleaning women in big cities usually get _____ by the hour.
(1998 全国高考)

A. pay B. paying C. paid D. to pay

(5) While shopping , people sometimes can't help _____ into buying something they don't really need. (1996 全国高考)

A. to persuade B. persuading
C. being persuaded D. be persuaded

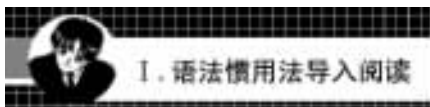
(6) The first textbook _____ for teaching English as a foreign language came out in the 16th century. (1994 全国高考)

A. having written B. to be written
C. being written D. written

(7) The visiting Minister expressed his satisfaction with the talks , _____ that he had enjoyed his stay here. (1994 全国高考)

A. having added B. to add
C. adding D. added

Unit 42



Do You Like Traveling ?

Jack : Do you like traveling ?

Jill : I like traveling for pleasure , to get to places when I'm on holiday , for instance. But I don't like traveling to work—queuing(排队) for buses and standing in tubes(地铁) in the rush hour(上、下班交通拥挤的时间).

Jack : Or getting stuck in traffic jams when you're driving !

Jill : Exactly.

Jack : I used to like hitch-hiking(搭便车旅行) best when I was a student. It's a very cheap and effective way of seeing a country , if you've got the time and energy.

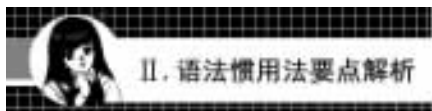
Jill : I used to enjoy motoring and staying at cheap inns , or even camping out in the summer. A pleasant change from city life , I used to think.

Jack : I think now I like traveling by air best. I like getting to different places fast. I enjoy sensing the sudden changes in social atmosphere and climate. Don't you ?

Jill : No , I like feeling the ground under my feet. Traveling by rail

and road are my favorite ways of traveling. I quite enjoy traveling by sea, too, but no one will tempt me into a plane, thank you very much!

(180 words)



1. V-ing P 和 V-ed 用法

V-ing P 结构和 V-ed P 结构经常具有相同的句法作用，但意义上有很大差别，主要有两点。

(1) 主动和被动差别，V-ing P 表示主动，V-ed P 表示被动。如：

I like traveling. (主动)

He got struck. (被动)

(2) 进行中与已完成的差别，V-ing P 表示进行中，V-ed P 表示已完成。如：developing country (发展中国家)，developed country (发达国家)。

2. 介词 by 用法

介词 by 是表示交通方式的最常用的词，by 之后直接接表示工具或方式的名词，名词前没有冠词，如：by bus, by train, by rail, by bike, by air, by sea 等。

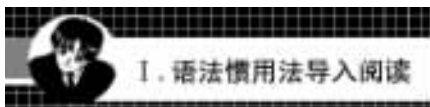
3. enjoy 用法

enjoy 有“欣赏”、“享受……的乐趣”和“喜欢”等意思，用法主要有三种：(1) enjoy + NP；(2) enjoy + V-ing P；(3) enjoy oneself (at NP/with NP/V-ing P)。例见本节选文。又如：

I enjoyed that film.

She enjoys reading stories.

Unit 43



Asking for the Way

Visitor : Can you tell me how to reach the bank please ?

Policeman : Which bank ? There are two : the Allied Irish Bank and the Bank of Ireland.

Visitor : I have an AIB pass card and I want to withdraw (提款) money from the bank.

Policeman : You need to go to the Allied Irish Bank which is near the local shopping center , Dunnes Stores.

Visitor : How do I get there ? I have no knowledge of this area.

Policeman : Cross the road and turn left at the other side. Walk along the footpath (人行道) until you reach the traffic lights. You will see a shopping center on the right hand side. Walk across the road and turn right after the shopping center. Keep going straight for about 100m and the bank is to your left.

Visitor : It sounds very complicated (复杂). How far is it from here ?

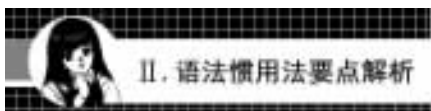
Policeman : It's not so complicated. It's about five minutes walk from here. I can draw a map for you if you wish.

Visitor : Oh , I would really appreciate that. By the way will I be

going North or South ?

Policeman : You will be going northwards. You are now in the Western part of the city and the Allied Irish Bank is situated in the North East. Here's a rough sketch of the area.

(215 words)



1. 问路惯用基本表达法

问路与指路,有一些惯用基本表达法。如下:

Excuse me. Where's the washroom ?(T15)

Can you tell me how to get to the post office ?(T15)

Excuse me. Which bus goes to World Park ?(T15)

Excuse me. Which is the way to the Bank of China ?(T15)

Excuse me. Can you tell me the way to the station , please ?
(T15)

How can I get to the No. 4 Middle School ?(T15)

It's over there. (T15)

It's about 400 meters from here. (T15)

Go down this street until you see the tall red building. (T15)

Turn right/left at the first/second crossing/corner. (T15)

You can't miss it. (T15)

You can take bus No. 305. (T15)

You'd better take a taxi. (T15)

Sorry. I don't know. I am a stranger here. (T15)

2. keep on V-ing P 用法

keep on V-ing P,表示继续做某事或重复做某事。例见本节

选文。又如：

He kept lying to me.

Keep going until you reach a large hall.

It is a boring job ,but I tried to keep going somehow.

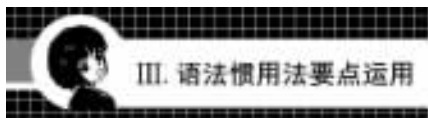
3. until 与 till 用法

until 与 till 同义，都有“直到……为止”的含义。两个词的用法有相通之处，又有差别。until 和 till 用于肯定句，表示时间延续的终点，其谓语动词动作一般是延续性的。如：I will be here until/till ten o'clock tomorrow. until 和 till 用于否定句，表示某动作“直到……才(开始)”，其谓语动词动作一般是非延续性的。如：He didn't finish the work till yesterday. until 可用于句首，而 till 通常不用于句首。此外，until when 疑问句中，until 要放在句首。例如：Until when do the pubs stay open ?

另外，until 用于否定句，常有两种句式：

(1)“Not until(句首)+倒装(主)句”。如：Not until I began to work did I realize how poor my knowledge was.

(2)“It is not until... that...”。如：It was not until the early years of the 19th century that man knew what heat is.



1. 单项填空

(1) The film brought the hours back to me _____ I was taken good care of in that far-away village. (2001 全国高考)

A. that B. until C. where D. when

(2) After the war , a new school building was put up _____ there had once been a theatre. (1997 全国高考)

A. that B. where C. which D. when

(3) She thought I was talking about her daughter , _____ , in fact , I was talking about my daughter. (1995 全国高考)

A. whom B. where C. which D. while

(4) The man _____ is our new teacher.

A. whom you spoke B. whom you spoke to
C. with who you spoke D. you spoke with whom

(5) Here is the girl _____ wallet has been stolen.

A. who B. whom C. whose D. her

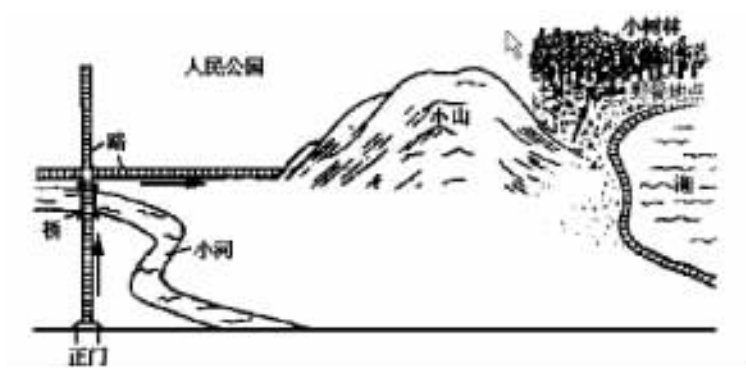
2. 情景作文(1995 年全国高考)

假定你是李华。你和几个朋友约定星期天在人民公园野餐 (to have a picnic)。你们的英国朋友 Peter 也应邀参加。请你根据下面的示意图, 给他写封短信, 告诉他进公园后如何找到你们。

注意:

(1) 词数 80 ~ 100。

(2) 开头语已为你写好。

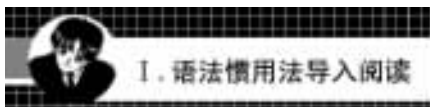


June 1st, 1995

Dear Peter ,

We're so glad you're coming to join us on Sunday. Here is how you can find us.

Unit 44



Jessica's Ball

It was the first day of school. Javier was starting first grade and his older sister , Juana , was going into fourth grade.

Javier and Juana kissed their mother good-bye and ran out to the sidewalk. Waiting there were their friends , Otto and Jessica. Jessica had her basketball. She loved the game and always carried her ball to school with her.

“ Hey , Otto and Jessica. Let's go , ” called Juana.

“ All right , ” said Otto. “ But let's be careful. It's the first day back to school , and some people may not remember their safety rules. ”

They started down the sidewalk talking and laughing. As they turned the corner , they came upon their friend , Jamie , getting into a van(运货车) with his mother. Jamie was in a wheelchair. His Mom always took him to school in their van. Jamie's friends always saw him riding in the back seat with his seat belt buckled(扣住).

“ Hey , Jamie , ” called Otto. “ We'll see you at school ! ”

“ You'd better get moving , ” laughed Jamie , “ or you'll be late. ”

“ See you there. ”

The friends continued down the street. They could see their crossing guard , Eduardo , at the next corner.

Jessica was excited because basketball tryouts(选拔赛) were after school that day. As they arrived at the corner , she lost control of her ball while dribbling (运球) , and it bounced into the street. As Jessica moved to run after her ball , Otto rolled in front of her.

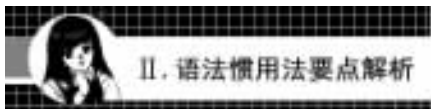
“ Don't go , Jessica. Never chase(追) a ball into the street. You can get hurt if you run into the street. Let Eduardo get it for you , he's the grown-up , ” Otto reminded her.

Eduardo waited for traffic to pass before rescuing(取回) Jessica's ball.

“ Thanks , Eduardo. Sorry. I guess I forgot our safety rules. I won't play with my ball anymore unless I'm in a safe place. ” Jessica was sorry. She knew the traffic rules , but wasn't careful. She could have been hurt badly.

Eduardo looked left , right , and left again , looking all ways , even over his shoulder , to make sure no cars were coming before he went in to the crosswalk (斑马线) to cross the joyful group. “ Good-bye students. Have a nice day. See you this afternoon , ” he called after them.

(361 words)



1. 倒装

倒装，是句子成分，特别是主谓结构倒置。倒装，从程度上

看有局部倒装和全部倒装。倒装的形式主要有两种，语法倒装和强调倒装。语法倒装，是语法结构要求的倒装。如：

He went to watch the football game. So did I.

强调倒装，见于以下场合。

(1) 谓语动词为 be, come, go, lie, fall, stand, walk, run 等，副词连用，为表示强调，可以将状语置于句首，并将主谓倒置。如：

He fell down. →

Down he fell. (部分倒装)

Down fell he. (全部倒装)

(2) 为了强调表语或状语，可以将强调部分前置，主谓倒置。如：

On the hill stands a great tower.

Present at the meeting were the school headmaster, the teachers and the students' parents.

以下还有两种常见倒装情况，介乎于语法倒装和强调倒装之间。

(1) here 或 there 置于句首时，主语为名词性结构，主谓倒装。如：

Here comes the bus.

There goes the bell.

(2) 句子主语部分过长，谓语部分较短，可以倒装主谓以使句子平衡。如：

In came the man with a large belly in front of him.

2. see sb V-ing P 和 see sb VP 用法

感官动词 see，可以用 V-ing P 结构作宾补，也可以用 VP 结构做宾补，但两者意义差别较大。see sb V-ing P 表示看见某人正在做某事，即见某人在做某事的进程中。如：I saw him working

in the garden yesterday. 而 see sb VP 表示看见某人做某事，即看见某人做某事的始终过程。如：I saw him work in the garden. 类似的动词还有 watch, observe, notice, look at, hear, listen to, smell, taste, feel 等。

3. had better 用法

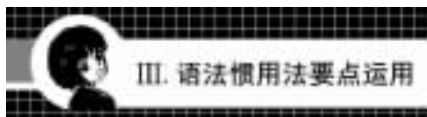
had better 意思是“最好”，实际上是一个短语助动词。作为短语助动词，后面当然接原形动词。它的否定式是 had better not。例见本节选文。又如 It is pretty cold. You'd better put on my coat.

4. V-ing P 结构作状语

V-ing P 结构或动词的-ing 形式作状语通常表示谓语动词动作的背景或陪衬动作，它可以表示时间、原因、结果、条件、让步、方式或伴随状况。本节选文中“ They started down the sidewalk talking and laughing. ”一句中的“ talking and laughing ”是谓语动词“ started ”的伴随状况。

5. 情态动词推测用法

情态动词 can, could, may, might, must 等，可以表示推测。“情态动词 + have + V-ed ”表示对过去情况的推测。例如：The road is wet. It must have rained last night. 注意：could, might 表示推测时没有时态意义，只表示程度意义，用它们表示推测，和 can, may 相比，可能性要低。



1. 单项填空

(1) —Isn't that Ann's husband over there ?

—No, it _____ be him -I'm sure he doesn't wear glasses.

英文报的故事专栏写一篇短文。(1997 全国高考)

注意：1. 短文必须包括图画所表现的主要内容，可以适当增减细节，使其连贯、完整；

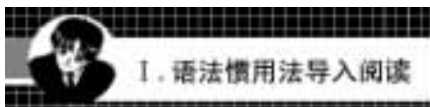
2. 叙述必须用第一人称；

3. 词数 100 左右。生词：违章者 offender n.

十字路口 crossroads n.



Unit 45



Hotel

Jackson : Excuse me , are there any beds vacant(空的) ? I'd like to book a room for tomorrow.

Reception Desk : Let me see. Yes , we have vacant rooms. What kind of room do you want ?

Jackson : A double room(双人间) with twin beds(两张单人床) , please. By the way , I prefer bath to shower.

Reception Desk : No problem. Could you give me your name , sir ?

Jackson : Jackson.

(Jackson arrives at the hotel.)

Reception Desk : Good afternoon , sir , what can I do for you ?

Jackson : I believe you have a room reserved for me. My name is Jackson.

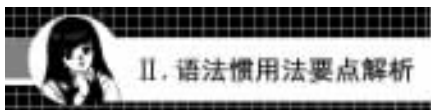
Reception Desk : Let me see. Oh yes. We have Room 12B06 reserved(预定) for you. Could you fill in this registration card , please ?

Jackson : Of course.

Reception Desk : Thank you. Here's your key and the lift's just

round the corner. The bell boy will take you to your room , and I'll get the porter to take your luggage up right now.

(152 words)



1. 旅店基本惯用法

熟悉旅店基本惯用表达。如：

Excuse me , are there any beds vacant ?

I'd like to book a room for tomorrow.

What kind of room do you want ?

A double room with twin beds , please.

I believe you have a room reserved for me.

Could you fill in this registration card , please ?

Do you want me to clean the room ? (T9)

Can I help you ? (T9)

Would you like me to help you ? (T9)

What can I do for you ? (T9)

Let me take your bags. (T9)

Thank you. That would be nice/ fine. (T9)

That's very kind of you , but I can manage it myself. (T9)

I'd like to check out , please.

2. have sb + VP / V-ing P / V-ed P 用法

动词 have , 可以用 VP , V-ing P , V-ed P 三种结构做宾语补足语。“have + 宾语 + VP”表示促使宾语完成从开始到结束的全部动作 ; “have + 宾语 + V-ing P”表示促使宾语处在或保持在某种动作或状态中。如 : He had the fire burning day and night. (他让火整天燃着。)“have + 宾语 + V-ed P”表示促使宾语承受某种动作或进入某种被动状态中。如 : He had his leg broken. (他的腿跌断了。)在

“have + 宾语 + V-ed P”结构中, have 有三种不同意义。试比较:

We had the problem solved. (表示“致使”, 一种有意的行为)

She had her arm broken in an accident. (表示“遭受”, 一种非有意的行为)

I have not any money left. (表示“有”).

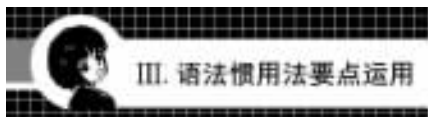
3. at 和 in(空间介词)用法

介词 at 和 in 都可表示空间, 表示“在……地方”的概念, 一般而言, at 用于小地点, in 用于大地域。例如:

She arrived in New York this morning.

On his way to Washington, he arrived at New York this morning.

在第二句中, 纽约被视为路途一个点, 所以用 at。



1. 情景对话

(1) 提前打电话到旅馆预定房间。

(2) 在旅店进行住宿登记。

(3) 向旅店经理抱怨服务质量太差。

2. 假设你是李华, 在美国探亲。2000年2月8日清晨, 你目击了一起交通事故。警察局让你写一份材料, 报告当时所见情况。根据下列图画写出报告。(2000 全国高考)

注意:

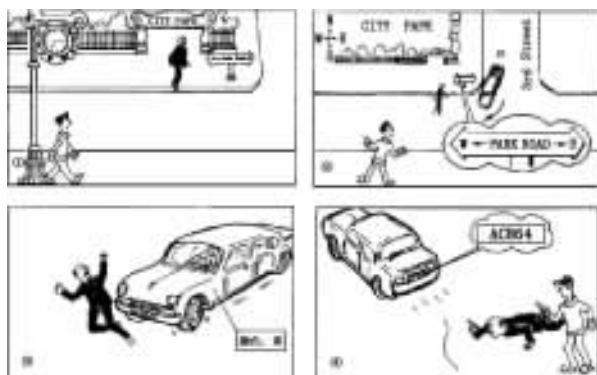
(1) 目击者应该准确报告事实。

(2) 词数 100 左右。

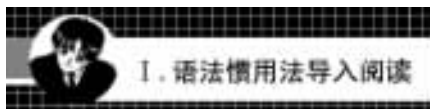
(3) 结尾已为你写好。

About two minutes later I stopped a passing car and took the old

man to the nearest hospital.



Unit 46



Differences Between American and British English

While there are certainly many more varieties of English, American and British English are the two varieties that are taught in most ESL/EFL programs. Generally, it is agreed that no one version is “correct”, however, there are certainly preferences in use. The most important rule is to try to be consistent in your usage. The following guide is meant to point out the principal differences between these two varieties of English.

In British English the present perfect is used to express an action that has occurred in the recent past that has an effect on the present moment. For example: “I’ve lost my key. Can you help me look for it?” In American English “I lost my key. Can you help me look for it?” is also possible. In British English this would be considered incorrect. However, both forms are generally accepted in standard American English. Other differences involving the use of the present perfect in British English and simple past in American English include “already”, “just” and “yet”.

There are really very few differences between standard British English and standard American English. Probably the major differences between British and American English lies in the choice of vocabulary and pronunciation. Some words mean different things in the two

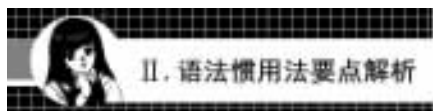
varieties. For example :“ Mean ” , when used as an adjective , means angry , bad humored in American English. In British English it means not generous or tight fisted. There are many more examples. If there is a difference in usage , your dictionary will note the different meanings in its definition of the term. Many vocabulary items are also used in one form and not in the other. One of the best examples of this is the terminology used for automobiles.

American English	British English
trunk	boot
truck	lorry

Once again , your dictionary should list whether the term is used in British English or American English.

There are some general differences between British and American spellings. There is a large class of words in British English that end in “-our ”. For Americans , they prefer to spell them with the ending “-or ”.

(346 words)



1. 同形词 lie 和 lie

《英语课程标准》词汇表中收有同形词 lie 和 lie。一个 lie(n/vi) 意义为“谎言”或“说谎”。用作动词时，V-ed 形式(过去式和过去分词形式)均为 lied，V-ing 形式(现在分词形式)为 lying。例如：

She lied to him.

She lies about her age.

She tells too many lies.

另一个 lie(v.) 意义为“躺”、“卧”、“平放”、“处于”。V-ed 形式变化特殊，过去式为 lay，过去分词为 lain，V-ing 形式为 lying。例如：

There is a dog lying at his feet.

The letter lay open on his desk for several days.

2. It is V-ed that 结构

表示“据说”、“大家相信”等意思，可以用 It is V-ed that 结构，相应的动词有：believe，consider，declare，expect，feel，report，say，see，suppose，think，understand 等。

It is said that... 据说

It is reported that... 据报道

It is believed that... 大家相信

It is hoped that... 大家希望

It is well known that... 众所周知

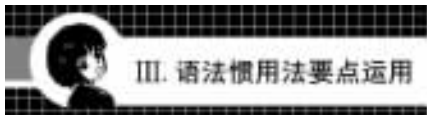
It is thought that... 大家认为

It is suggested that... 据建议

It is taken granted that... 被视为当然

It has been decided that... 大家决定

It must be remembered that... 务必记住的是



1. 阅读理解(2001 全国高考)

If you ask people to name the one person who had the greatest

effect on the English language , you will get answers like “Shakespeare ” , “ Samuel Johnson ” , and “ Webster ” , but none of these men had any effect at all compared to a man who didn't even speak English-William the Conqueror.

Before 1066 , in the land we now call Great Britain lived peoples belonging to two major language groups. In the west-central region lived the Welsh , who spoke a Celtic language , and in the north lived the Scots , whose language , though not the same as Welsh , was also Celtic. In the rest of the country lived the Saxons , actually a mixture of Anglos , Saxons , and other Germanic and Nordic peoples , who spoke what we now call Anglo-Saxon (or Old English) , a Germanic language. If its state of affairs had lasted , English today would be close to German.

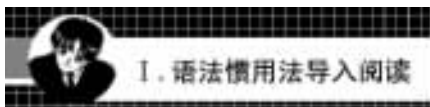
But this state of affairs did not last. In 1066 the Normans led by William defeated the Saxons and began their rule over England. For about a century , French became the official language of England while Old English became the language of peasants. As a result , English words of politics and the law come from French rather than German. In some cases , modern English even shows a distinction (区别) between upper-class French and lower-class Anglo-Saxon in its words. We even have different words for some foods , meat in particular , depending on whether it is still out in the fields or at home ready to be cooked , which shows the fact that the Saxon peasants were doing the farming , while the upper-class Normans were doing most of the eating.

When Americans visit Europe for the first time , they usually find Germany more “ foreign ” than France because the German they see on sign and advertisements seems much more different from English than

French does. Few realize that the English language is actually Germanic in its beginning and that the French influences are all the result of one man's ambition.

- (1) The two major languages spoken in what is now called Great Britain before 1066 were _____.
- A. Welsh and Scottish
 - B. Nordic and Germanic
 - C. Celtic and Old English
 - D. Anglo-Saxon and Germanic
- (2) Which of the following groups of words are, by inference, rooted in French?
- A. president, lawyer, beef
 - B. president, bread, water
 - C. bread, field, sheep
 - D. folk, field, cow
- (3) Why does France appear less foreign than Germany to Americans on their first visit to Europe?
- A. Most advertisements in France appear in English.
 - B. They know little of the history of the English language.
 - C. Many French words are similar to English ones.
 - D. They know French better than German.
- (4) What is the subject discussed in the text?
- A. The history of Great Britain.
 - B. The similarity between English and French.
 - C. The rule of England by William the Conqueror.
 - D. The French influences on the English language.

Unit 47



Language as a Tool of Culture Imperialism(帝国主义)

The phrase “Everybody learns English” can be heard just about everywhere and believing it seems to have made the Chinese more confident in their exposure to the world.

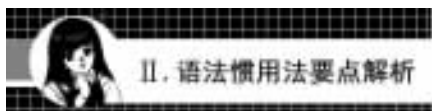
However, at the same time, English’s growing popularity in China has some people a bit worried about the state of the Chinese culture.

One of those people fretting(烦躁) is Professor Du Zuyi of Chinese University of Hong Kong, who recently warned of the negative effects if English were to become the common language of the academic(学术的) world.

Du has joined others in saying that “globalization” is a form of Western domination(支配权). If we follow these trends blindly and put too much emphasis on English in this country, it could take up a lot of people’s time and energy, decrease(降低) confidence in Chinese language, and block the development and popularization of Chinese culture, he said.

And China is not the only country to see English a threat to the native language and culture. Singapore, where the Chinese are a majority, and Malaysia, where there is a strong Chinese minority, have spoken of the same challenge.

(182 words)



1. seem 用法

seem 意思是“好像”、“似乎”或“仿佛”，是一个简单的系动词，但用法却灵活而多变。常见用法如下：

(1) seem Adj.

He seems happy today.

(2) seem like NP

It seems like a good place for holiday.

(3) seem to be Adj. / NP

She seemed to be right in that.

She seemed to be a nice girl.

(4) seem to NP (to be) Adj. P/NP

She seems to me (to be) the best (student).

(5) seem to VP

They seem to know what is going on.

(6) It seems that. . .

It seems that she is the best student.

(7) It seems as if/ as though. . .

It seems as if he was right.

It seemed as though they would win the game.

(8) There seem to be

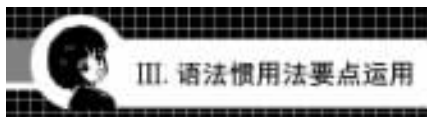
There seems to be someone outside.

2. be to VP 用法

“be to VP”结构可以表示将来动作或状态等。具体用法主要有两个：

(1) 表示按计划或安排即将发生的动作。例如：I am to play football tomorrow afternoon. 这种用法常见于报纸和广播，用以宣布官方计划或决定。例如：The Queen is to visit Japan next year.

(2) 表示命令或禁止。例如：Tell her she's not to be back late.



1. 阅读理解(1998 全国高考)

“As I stood in front of the grave (墓) of President Richard Nixon, I was thinking about the time 25 years ago when this president helped bring the United States and China closer together. Young people of our two countries should help this relationship grow.”

This remark was made by a Shanghai student when speaking to his fellow students at the Nixon Library in California, U. S. A. He was one of 80 middle school students from China attending a month-long “Youth Summit”. The Summit was to mark the 25th anniversary (周年) of President Nixon's journey to China, which was the turning point in China-U. S. relations.

The Youth Summit was aimed at increasing understanding and friendship between young students of the two countries through visits and discussions. Seventy-five American students were selected to visit

China. They also visited the Nixon Library on July 21 before leaving for Beijing the next day. The head of the Library said he was pleased to see the American and Chinese students talking and laughing together.

One Chinese student said, "I didn't find it particularly difficult to talk with Americans. We have our differences, but we have a lot in common. Dialogue is good for us."

(1) The works "Youth Summit" refer to _____.

- A. visits to the Nixon Library
- B. the Chinese students' visit to the U. S.
- C. a meeting discussing relations between China and the U. S.
- D. activities to strengthen the ties between the Chinese and American students

(2) The student from Shanghai thought about the time 25 years ago because it was when Nixon _____.

- A. died
- B. visited China
- C. became U. S. president
- D. started building the library in his name

(3) The text is mainly about _____.

- A. the China-U. S. relations
- B. the Nixon Library
- C. President Nixon
- D. the Youth Summit

2. 书面表达(2004 湖北高考)

三班的同学进行了一场有关英语学习的讨论。讨论的题目是：学习英语要不要从儿童时期开始？请你根据下表中的提示写一篇短文，介绍讨论的情况。

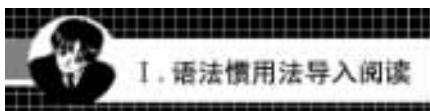
一些同学认为	另一些同学认为
1. 应从儿童时期开始学习英语 2. 儿童时期记忆力好,可以记住很多单词 3. 能为以后的英语学习打下坚实的基础	1. 不应从儿童时期开始学习英语 2. 儿童时期既要学汉语拼音又要学英语,易混淆 3. 会影响汉语学习和今后的英语学习
讨论未取得一致意见	

- 注意:(1) 文章的起始句已给出;
 (2) 词数:100 左右(不包括已给的起始句);
 (3) 参考词汇:基础 foundation

汉语拼音 Chinese Pinyin

The students of Class 3 had a discussion about whether it is necessary to start learning English from childhood.

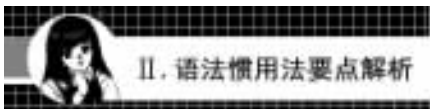
Unit 48



Do the English Speak English ?

I arrived in London at last. The railway station was big , black and dark. I did not know the way to my hotel ,so I asked a porter. I not only spoke English very carefully , but very clearly as well. The porter , however , could not understand me. I repeated my question several times and at last he understood. He answered me , but he spoke neither slowly nor clearly. “ I am a foreigner ,” I said. Then he spoke slowly , but I could not understand him. My teacher never spoke English like that ! The porter and I looked at each other and smiled. Then he said something and I understood it. “ You’ll soon learn English !” he said. I wonder. In England , each person speaks a different language. The English understood each other , but I don’t understand them ! Do they speak English ?

(139 words)



1. neither... nor... 用法

neither... nor... 是一种平级平衡结构, neither 和 nor 后接的词或短语总是平级的或平衡的。例见本节选文。又如:

I neither drink nor smoke.

He neither knows nor cares what happens.

The book is neither interesting nor useful.

I like neither Mary nor Tom.

Neither Mary nor Tom was on time.

句法结构相似的平等结构还有 not only... but also... ; either... or... ; both... and... 。

2. the Adj. /V-ing/V-ed 主谓一致

“the + Adj. /V-ing/V-ed”结构充当主语时, 往往根据意义决定谓语动词单、复数形式: 如果指一类或一批人, 谓语动词用复数形式; 如果指单个的人或抽象概念, 谓语动词用单数形式。例如:

The good in him overweighs the bad.

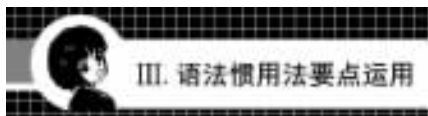
The English understood each other, but I don't understand them!

The seeing sees nothing.

3. each other 和 one another 用法

短语 each other 和 one another 都表达相互关系概念, 因此, 被语法书称为相互代词。例见本节选文。又如: It is easy to see that the people of different cultures have always copied one another. 严谨的用法, each other 用来指两者关系, one another 用来指三者

及以上关系,但是,在现代英语中,两个短语交替使用的实例已经很多。这两个短语可加-'s 构成所有格。例如: The students borrowed each other's notes.



1. 单项填空

(1) I invited Joe and Linda to dinner , but _____ of them came.

(2004 北京高考)

A. neither B. either C. none D. both

(2) —I would never ever come to this restaurant again. The food is terrible !

—_____ . (2004 广西高考)

A. Nor am I B. Neither would I
C. Same with me D. So do I

(3) The men will have to wait all day _____ the doctor works faster. (2001 北京春季高考)

A. if B. unless C. whether D. that

(4) It is these poisonous products _____ can cause the symptoms of the flu , such as headache and aching muscles. (2003 上海高考)

A. who B. that C. how D. what

2. 短文改错(2004 湖南高考)

此题要求改正所给短文中的错误。对标有题号的每一行作出判断:如无错误,在该行右边的横线上画一个勾(√);如有错误(每行只有一个错误),则按下列情况改正:

该行多一个词:把多余的词用斜线(\)划掉,在该行右边横线上写出该词,并也用斜线(\)划掉。

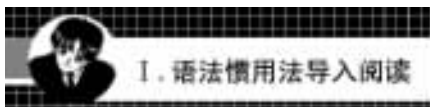
该行缺一个词：在缺词处加一个漏词符号(^)，在该行右边横线上写出该加的词。

该行错一个词：在错的词下划一横线，在该行右边横线上写出改正后的词。

注意：原行没有错的不要改。

When I walked into the classroom ,the teacher was handing
in the tests. I was feeling very nervous. I had not studied 1 _____
at all at the weekend as I had thought it would be easy test. 2 _____
I went through the test for many times but I could only answer
3 _____
three out from the twenty questions. I did not want to fail 4 _____
the exam. Then ,I put my book under my desk ,opening it
5 _____
and started looking for the answer. The teacher wasn't 6 _____
looking at me ,but I copied something. Suddenly ,I felt a hand
7 _____
on my shoulder !The teacher caught me cheating. I don't 8 _____
know what to say. Luckily ,the teacher did not push for 9 _____
cheating but instead gave me a second chance. 10 _____

Unit 49



Language

Because man uses language , he has a way of sharing information and ideas with others. Almost everything he has accomplished(完成) has been done thanks to the cooperation(合作) and understanding that language has made possible.

People communicate with one another in many ways. A smile or a blush is a form of communication. So is a flag signal hoisted(升起) by a ship at sea , or the formula (公式) of a chemist or a mathematician. So , in fact , it is a work of art that allows you to share the artist's feelings.

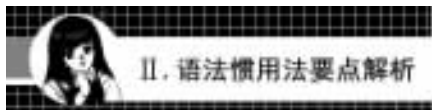
But none of these is language. A language is made up of two main things. One is a vocabulary , a supply of words for all the things you want to talk or write about. The other is a system of grammar , a set of rules for combining the words into sentences.

Learning a language can be very hard unless you are brought up speaking it. Languages grow naturally , picking up and abandoning(放弃) words and idioms. Some words are oddly spelled. Rules are useful in most cases , but there are exceptions. In some languages ,

such as Chinese , written words are not even spelled. They are signs that used to be pictures of the things for which the words stand. In Chinese , too , the pitch of your voice when you pronounce a certain sound tells people what you are saying. One sound can mean several things.

But knowing a language well is worth the effort. People like to know exactly what you mean , and want you to know exactly what they mean. They think better of you when you speak and write your own language well. And foreigners are often annoyed when Americans make no effort to speak their languages well.

(290 words)



1. It is/was... 强调句型用法

“It + is/was + 被强调成分 + that 从句”句型是最常见的强调手段之一。强调的部分可以是主语、宾语或状语。例如本节选文中：So , in fact , it is a work of art that allows you to share the artist's feelings. 又如：

His mother threw an egg at the Minister of Education yesterday.

→ It was his mother that threw an egg at the Minister of Education yesterday.

→ It was an egg that his mother threw at the Minister of Education yesterday.

→ It was yesterday that his mother threw an egg at the Minister of Education.

→ It was the Minister of Education that his mother threw an egg

at yesterday.

在口语中，如果被强调的是主语，从句可以由 who 引导。

2. worth, worthwhile 用法

《英语课程标准》词汇表收录有 worth 和 worthwhile，它们都是形容词，都可以表达“值得”的概念。worth 用法主要有如下三种：

(1) be worth + N. 例如：How much is your car worth?

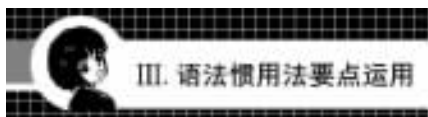
(2) be worth + V-ing P, 意思是“……值得(被)做”。例如：
The question is not worth discussing again and again.

(3) It is worth V-ing P, 意思是“做某事值得”。如：It is not worth discussing again and again.

worthwhile 意思是“值得做的”，主要用法是 It is worthwhile V-ing P. 如：It is worthwhile taking the trouble to have a try.

3. mean to VP 和 mean V-ing P 用法

mean to VP 意思是“打算、想做某事”。如：I mean to go, but my father would not allow me to. (我想去，但是我父亲不肯让我去。) mean V-ing P 意思是“意味着做某事”。例如：To raise wage means increasing purchasing power. (加工资意味着增加购买力。)



1. 英语中有一句俗语：“All grammars leak.”你同意这一观点吗？四至六人一组，分为正、反两方，一方支持这个论点，一方反驳这个论点。

2. 阅读理解(2003 全国高考)

There is one foreign product the Japanese are buying fast than

others , and its popularity has caused an uneasy feeling among many Japanese.

That product is foreign words.

Gairaigo—words that come from outside—have been part of the Japanese language for centuries. Mostly borrowed from English and Chinese , these terms are often changed into forms no longer understood by native speakers.

But in the last few years the trickle (涓涓细流) of foreign words has become a flood , and people fear the increasing use of foreign words is making it hard for the Japanese to understand each other and could lead to many people forgetting the good qualities of traditional (传统的) Japanese.

“ The popularity of foreign words is part of the Japanese interest in anything new , ” says university lecturer and writer Takashi Saito. “ By using a foreign word you can make a subject seem new , which makes it easier for the media (媒体) to pick up. ”

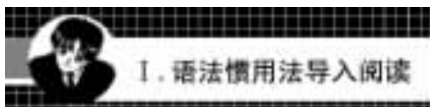
“ Experts (专家) often study abroad and use English terms when they speak with people in their own fields. Those terms are then included in government white papers , ” said Muturo Kai , president of the National Language Research Institute. “ Foreign words find their way easily into announcements made to the general public , when they should really be explained in Japanese. ”

Against the flow of new words , many Japanese are turning back to the study of their own language. Saito’s *Japanese to Be Read Aloud* is one of many language books that are now flying off booksellers’ shelves.

1. What advantages do foreign words have over traditional Japanese terms ?

- A. The ideas expressed in foreign words sound new.
 - B. Foreign words are best suited for announcements.
 - C. Foreign words make new subjects easier to understand.
 - D. The use of foreign words makes the media more popular.
2. In the opinion of Takashi Saito ,Japanese people _____.
- A. are good at learning foreign languages
 - B. are willing to learn about new things
 - C. trust the media
 - D. respect experts
3. Which of the following plays an important part in the spread of foreign words ?
- A. The media and government papers.
 - B. Best-selling Japanese textbooks.
 - C. The interest of young Japanese.
 - D. Foreign products and experts.
4. The book **Japanese to Be Read Aloud** _____.
- A. sells very well in Japan
 - B. is supposed by the government
 - C. causes misunderstanding among the readers
 - D. women depend on others in making decisions.

Unit 50

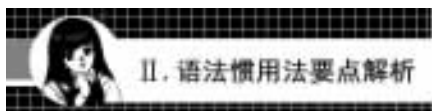


About Reading Books

It is simple enough to say that since books have classes—fiction , biography , poetry—we should separate them and take from each what is right that each should give us. Yet few people ask from books what books can give us. Most commonly we come to books with blurred (模糊的) and divided minds , asking of fiction that it shall be true , of poetry that it shall be false , of biography that it shall be flattering(奉承) , of history that it shall enforce our own prejudices(偏见). If we should banish all such preconceptions(偏见) when we read , that would be an admirable beginning. Do not dictate to your author ; try to become him. Be his fellow-worker and accomplice(同谋者). If you hang back , and reverse , and criticize at first , you are preventing yourself from getting the fullest possible value from what you read. But if you open your minds as widely as possible , then signs and hints of almost imperceptible(不能感觉到的) fineness , from the twist(迂回处) , and turn of the first sentences , will bring you into the presence of a human being unlike any other. Steep yourself in this , acquaint yourself with this , and soon you will find that your author is

giving you , or attempting to give you , something far more definite. The thirty-two chapters of a novel—if we consider how to read a novel first—are an attempt to make something as formed and controlled as a building ; but words are more impalpable (无形的) than bricks , reading is a longer and more complicated process than seeing. Perhaps the quickest way to understand the elements of what a novelist is doing is not to read , but to write , to make your own experiment with the dangers and difficulties of words. Recall , then , some events that has left a distinct impression on you—how at the corner of the street , perhaps , you passed two people talking. A tree shook , an electric light danced , the tone of the talk was comic , but also tragic , a whole vision , an entire conception , seemed contained in that moment.

(343 words)



1. 虚拟语气在条件从句中的用法

(1) 同现在事实相反的假设。

条件从句	主句
一般过去时形式	should (would) + 动词原形

例句 : If they were here , they would help you. (他们如果在那 , 他们会帮助你的。)

(2) 表示于过去事实相反的假设。

条件从句	主句
过去完成时形式	should (would) have + 过去分词

例句：If she had worked harder , she would have succeeded.
(如果再努力点，她会获得成功的。)

(3) 表示对将来的假想

条件从句	主句
一般过去时形式 were + 不定式 should + 动词原形	should + 动词原形 would + 动词原形

例句：If you succeeded , everything would be all right.

If you should succeed , everything would be all right.

If you were to succeed , everything would be all right.

(4) 主句与从句的动作发生在不同的时间，这时主、从句谓
语动词的虚拟语气形式因时间不同而不同，这叫做混合条件句。

例如：If you had asked him yesterday , you would know what to do
now. (从句与过去事实相反，主句与现在事实相反。)又如：If it
had rained last night (过去) , it would be very cold today (现在).

2. prevent 用法

prevent 意思为“防止”或“预防”，最常见的用法有两个：
prevent NP ; prevent NP from V-ing P，例见本节选文。又如：

These rules are intended to prevent accidents.

Unless we get more funding we'll be prevented from finishing
our experimental program.

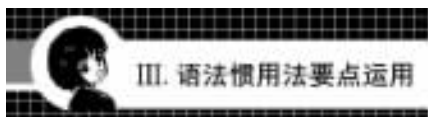
3. “come + Adj. /Adv. /Prep. ”短语

come 是一个十分常见的动词,和形容词、副词或介词搭配构成很多短语(动词),收入《英语课程标准》“习惯用语和固定搭配”的有 13 个: come about, come across, come back, come down, come from, come in, come off, come on, come out, come to, come true, come up, come up with 等。这些短语(动词)的用法,特别是可否后接其他成分,取决于 come 后加的是形容词、副词和介词。例见本节选文。又如:

His dream came true at last.

I came across an old friend this morning.

She came up with so many new ideas.



1. 完形填空 (2001 北京春季高考)

People do not analyse every problem they meet. Sometimes they try to remember a solution from the last time they had a 1 problem. They often accept the opinion or ideas of other people. Other times they begin to act without 2; they try to find a solution by trial and error. 3, when all of these methods 4, the person with a problem has to start analysing. There are six 5 in analysing a problem.

6 the person must recognize that there is a problem. For example, Sam's bicycle is broken, and he cannot ride it to class as he usually does. Sam must 7 that there is a problem with his bicycle.

Next the person must 8 the problem. Before Sam can repair

his bicycle , he must know why it does not work. For example , he must 9 the parts that are wrong.

Now the person must look for 10 that will make the problem clearer and lead to 11 solutions. For example , suppose Sam 12 that his bike does not work because there is something wrong with the brakes. 13 he can look in his bicycle repair book and read about brakes , 14 his friends at the bike shop , or look at his brakes carefully.

After 15 the problem , the person should have 16 suggestions for a possible solution. Take Sam as an example 17 , his suggestions might be : tighten or loosen the brakes ; buy new brakes and change the old ones.

In the end , one 18 seems to be the solution 19 the problem. Sometimes the 20 idea comes quite 21 because the thinker suddenly sees something in a 22 way. Sam , for example , suddenly sees there is a piece of chewing gum (口香糖) stuck to a brake. He 23 hits on the solution to his problem : he must 24 the brake.

Finally the solution is 25 . Sam does it and finds his bicycle works perfectly. In short he has solved the problem.

(1) A. serious B. usual C. similar D. common

(2) A. practice B. thinking C. understanding D. help

(3) A. Besides B. Instead

C. Otherwise D. However

(4) A. fail B. work C. change D. develop

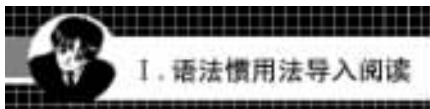
(5) A. ways B. conditions C. stages D. orders

(6) A. First B. Usually

C. In general D. Most importantly

- (7) A. explain B. prove C. show D. see
- (8) A. judge B. find C. describe D. face
- (9) A. check B. determine C. correct D. recover
- (10) A. answers B. skills
C. explanation D. information
- (11) A. possible B. exact C. real D. special
- (12) A. hopes B. argues C. decides D. suggests
- (13) A. In other words B. Once in a while
C. First of all D. At this time
- (14) A. look for B. talk to
C. agree with D. depend on
- (15) A. discussing B. settling down
C. comparing with D. studying
- (16) A. extra B. enough
C. several D. countless
- (17) A. secondly B. again C. also D. alone
- (18) A. suggestion B. conclusion
C. decision D. discovery
- (19) A. with B. into C. for D. to
- (20) A. next B. clear C. final D. new
- (21) A. unexpectedly B. late
C. clearly D. often
- (22) A. simple B. different C. quick D. sudden
- (23) A. fortunately B. easily
C. clearly D. immediately
- (24) A. clean B. separate C. loosen D. remove
- (25) A. recorded B. completed
C. tested D. accepted

Unit 51



What the Leaf Said

Once or twice a little leaf was heard to cry and sigh , as leaves often do when a gentle wind is blowing. And the twig(小树枝) said , “ What is the matter , little leaf ?”

“ The wind ,” said the leaf , “ just told me that one day it would pull me off , and throw me on the ground to die. ”

The twig told it to the branch , and the branch told it to the tree. When the tree heard it , it rustled(沙沙地响) all over , and sent word back to the trembling leaf.

“ Do not be afraid ,” it said ; “ hold on tight , and you shall not go off until you are ready. ”

So the leaf stopped sighing , and went on singing and rustling. It grew all the summer long till October. And when the bright days of autumn came , the leaf saw all the leaves around growing very beautiful.

Some were yellow , some were brown , and many were striped(加条纹) with different colors. Then the leaf asked the tree what this

meant.

The tree said, "All these leaves are getting ready to fly away, and they have put on these colors because of their joy."

Then the little leaf began to want to go, and grew very beautiful in thinking of it. When it was gay in colors, it saw that the branches of the tree had no bright colors on them.

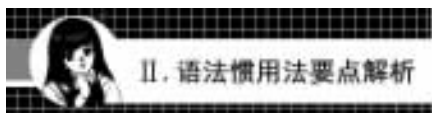
So the leaf said, "O branch! Why are you lead-colored while we are all beautiful and golden?"

"We must keep on our working clothes," said the tree, "for our work is not yet done; but your clothes are for holidays, because your task is now over."

Just then a little puff of wind came, and the leaf let go without thinking, and the wind took it up and turned it over and over.

Then it fell gently down under the edge of the fence, among hundreds of leaves, and has never waked to tell us what it dreamed about.

(325 words)



1. 直接引语与间接引语

引述言语一般可采取两种形式：一种是直接引语，即原样引用原话，以引号为标示；另一种是间接引语，即加以转述，转述的言语不用引号标示。由直接引语变为间接引语，不论哪类句子，句中时态、人称代词、限定词、表示时间状语或地点状语等都应作相应变化。列表如下：

直接引语		间接引语
陈述句		变为以 that 引导的宾语从句, 在口语中, that 常可省略。
一般疑问句		变成 if/whether 引导的宾语从句, 并将原来的疑问句语序调整为陈述句语序。主句中谓语动词为 say 时, 要改成 ask; 没有间接宾语时, 可加一个间接宾语。
选择疑问句或反意疑问句		变为 if/whether 引导的从句。
特殊疑问句		变为由 who, what, when 等疑问词引导的宾语从句, 前面加 ask。
祈使句		变为动词不定式, 否定式为 not + 动词不定式, 并根据句意在这个不定式的前面加上 ask, tell, urge, warn, remind, advise, order, beg 等动词。
感叹句		变为以 what, how 或 that 为引导词的句子, 或根据句意予以改写, 使之变为含义相当的陈述句。
时态变化	直接引语是客观事实、科学真理、现在习惯动作以及格言	时态不变
	主句谓语动词为各种现在时或一般将来时	时态不变
	主句谓语动词为过去时	动词由现在时变为过去时 一般现在时→一般过去时 现在进行时→过去进行时 一般将来时→过去将来时 现在完成时→过去完成时 一般过去时→过去完成时 过去完成时不变
指示代词	this	that
	these	those

续上表

时 间 状 语	now	then
	today	that day
	this week/month , etc.	that week/month , etc.
	yesterday	the day before ; the previous day
	last week/month , etc.	the week/month , etc.
	three days ago	three days before
	tomorrow	the next/following day
	the day after tomorrow	two days after , in two days' time
	next week	then/following week
地点 状语	here	there
动词	come	go

2. stop V-ing P 与 stop to VP 用法

stop to VP 意思是停止或中断某事后去做另一件事；stop V-ing P 意思是停止做在做的某事。例如：She reached the top of the hill and stopped to rest on a big rock by the side of the path. (她到了山顶，停下来在一个路边的大石头上休息。他们停下来，抽了根烟。) I must stop smoking. (我必须戒烟了。)

3. let 用法(II)

let 在 VOC 结构中，VP(即不带 to 的不定式)是常见的宾补结构。同义的 allow 和 permit 则以 to VP 为宾补结构。除少数惯用法外，let 不用于被动语态，因此，要表达“被允许做某事”的概念，用 allow 或 permit 代替 let。例见本节选文。又如：

Let him keep the book for two days.

He was allowed to keep the book for two days.

He was permitted to keep the book for two days.

B. had been warned ; would not have taken

C. would be warned ; had not taken

D. would have been warned ; had not taken

(5) If it _____ for the snow , we _____ the mountain yesterday.

(1991 全国高考)

A. were not ; could have climbed

B. were not ; could climb

C. had not been ; could have climbed

D. had not been ; could climb

(6) Peter said that he _____ home the next day.

A. went

B. will go

C. would go

D. had gone

2. 书面表达(2002 全国高考)

最近,你校同学正在参加某英文报组织的一场讨论。讨论的主题是:公园要不要收门票。请你根据下表所提供的信息,给报社写一封信,客观地介绍讨论情况。

60% 的同学认为:	40% 的同学认为:
1. 不应收门票; 2. 公园是公众休闲的地方; 3. 如收门票,需建大门、围墙,会影响城市形象。	1. 应收门票,但票价不宜高; 2. 支付园林工人工资; 3. 购新花木。

注意:1. 信的开头已为你写好。

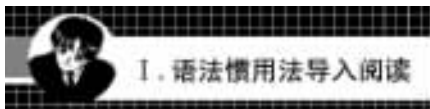
2. 词数:100 左右。

3. 参考词汇:门票 entrance fee

Dear Editor ,

I'm writing to tell you about the discussion we've had about whether an entrance fee should be charged for parks.

Unit 52



The Tiger

The tiger is a giant cat. His body is nearly covered with black stripes. Unlike the lion, he runs so fast that the swiftest horse cannot overtake(超过) him. By night, as well as by day, the tiger watches for his prey(猎物). With a frightful roar, he will seize a man, and carry him off.

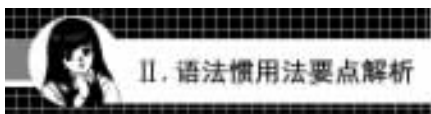
Have you ever thought what use whiskers (须) are to cats? Lions have great whiskers, and so have tigers and all other animals of the cat kind. Whenever you find an animal with whiskers like the cat's, you may be sure that animal steals softly among branches and thick bushes. By the slightest touch on the tiger's whiskers, he knows when there is anything in his road.

A few years ago, some English officers went out to hunt. When coming home from their day's sport, they found a little tiger kitten. They took it with them and tied it, with a collar(狗项圈) and chain, to the pole of their tent. It played about, to the delight of all who saw it.

One evening , just as it was growing dark , they heard a sound that frightened them greatly. It was the roar of a tiger. The kitten pulled at the chain and tried to break away. With a sharp cry , it answered the voice outside.

All at once , a large tigress bounded into the middle of the tent. She caught her kitten by the neck , and broke the chain which bound it. Then turning to the door of the tent , she dashed away as suddenly as she had come.

(261 words)



1. sure 用法

sure 有“确信”、“肯定”的意思，最常见的用法有：

- (1) be sure + 从句；
- (2) be sure of NP(对某事有把握；一定会/肯定会获得某事物)；
- (3) be sure to VP(肯定要做某事，一定会做某事)；
- (4) make sure of NP(核查清楚，核准)；
- (5) make sure that... (核查清楚，核准)。例见本节选文。

又如：

I'm sure of that. (T23)

I'm quite sure (that) she'll join us. (T23)

I'm not sure whether/ if she can come.

It's sure to rain.

You're sure to fail if you don't work hard.

Have you made sure of the facts ?

I will make sure that the letter leaves tonight.

2. nearly 与 almost 用法

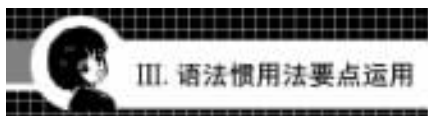
nearly 与 almost 都以表达“差不多”、“几乎”的概念，在很多场合可以通用，但又有区别：

(1) nearly 可以用在 not 之后，意思是“远远不(够)”，而 almost 不能。例如：I have \$ 200 , but that isn't nearly enough for the tuition.

(2) almost 可以和 any , no , nobody , nothing , none , never 等带否定意义的词连用，而 nearly 不能，例如：Almost no one believes him.

3. “So + V + S”倒装句型

“So + V + S”是一种倒装句型，so 表示“也”，代替上句相同部分，句子主谓部分倒装。如：Lions have great whiskers , and so have tigers and all other animals of the cat kind.



1. 为了配合国际爱护动物周活动，一家英文杂志邀请各国学生提供有关动物的故事。请根据下列六幅图画，用英语为该杂志写一篇故事。(1993 全国高考)

bark vi. & n. 吠叫

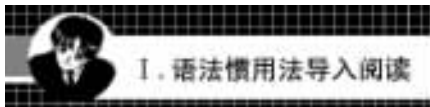
注意：

(1) 故事须包括所有图画的内容，可以适当增加细节，使故事连贯。

(2) 词数 100 左右。



Unit 53



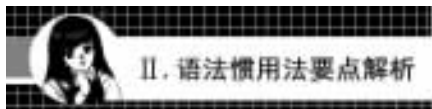
Mt. Fuji

A noted mountain, Mount Fuji attracts us with its height of 3,776m and its elegant appearance. It is a volcano(火山) that has been dormant(休眠的) since its last eruption(喷发) in 1707 but is still generally classified as active by geologists. The mountain's name, of Ainu origin, means "everlasting life." Mount Fuji, with its graceful conical(圆锥形的) form, has become famous throughout the world and is considered the sacred(神圣的) symbol of Japan. Among Japanese there is a sense of personal identification with the mountain, and thousands of Japanese climb to the shrine(圣地) on its peak every summer.

Although Mount Fuji appears to be a simple cone-type volcano, it is in fact three separate volcanoes, Small Mitake, Old Fuji and New Fuji. Small Mitake volcano is believed to have become inactive over 100 thousand years ago. The Old Fuji volcano formed the base of the current Mt. Fuji and is believed to have been active between approximately 100 thousand and 10 thousand years ago. The most recent, New Fuji, first became active about 10,000 years ago and has continued ever since to smolder or erupt occasionally. Over the millennia(千年), the lava(熔岩) and other effusions(喷发物) from New Fuji have covered over the two older volcanoes, enlarged the

slopes to their present expansive girth(周长), and otherwise given the mountain its current tapered form.

(217 words)



1. 过去时与现在完成时比较

过去时与现在完成时的差别,主要有以下几点:

(1)过去时表示过去某时发生的动作,或单纯叙述过去的事情,强调动作;现在完成时表示过去发生的或完成的动作或状态,其影响现在还存在,也可表示持续到现在的动作或状态,强调的是对现在的影响。

(2)过去时常与具体的过去时间状语连用,而现在完成时通常与模糊的时间状语连用,或无时间状语。一般过去时中常见时间状语如: yesterday, last week, ... ago, in 1990, in October, just now 等,而现在完成时常见时间状语如: for... , since... , so far, ever, never, just, yet, till/until... , up to now, in past years, always 等。

(3)现在完成时可表示持续到现在的动作或状态,动词一般是延续性的,如 live, teach, learn, work, study, know 等,过去时常用非持续性动词,如 come, go, leave, start, die, finish, become, get married 等。

2. 时间介词 since 和 for 用法

介词 since 和 for 都可以表达时间概念。since 说明动作起始时间, for 说明动作延续时间长度。例如:

I have lived here for more than thirty years.

I have lived here since I was born.

since 主要用于完成时, for 可以用于完成时,也可以用于过

去时。如：I worked here for more than twenty years.

注意 since 的常见搭配：

(1) since + 过去一个时间点，如具体的年、月、日、钟点等。

如：I have been here since 1989.

(2) since + 一段时间 + ago，如：I have been here since five months ago.

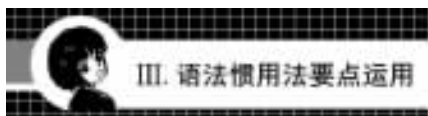
(3) since + 从句，如：Great changes have taken place since you left.

(4) since 还用于一个特别句型：“It is + 一段时间 + since 从句”。如：It is two years since I became a postgraduate student.

3. “某国人”名词用法

表示“某国人”的名词，单、复数形式因习惯不同而各异。

名称	总称(谓语用复数)	一个人	两个人
中国人	the Chinese	a Chinese	two Chinese
瑞士人	the Swiss	a Swiss	two Swiss
澳大利亚	the Australians	an Australian	two Australians
俄国人	the Russians	a Russian	two Russians
意大利人	the Italians	an Italian	two Italians
希腊人	the Greek	a Greek	two Greeks
法国人	the French	a Frenchman	two Frenchmen
日本人	the Japanese	a Japanese	two Japanese
美国人	the Americans	an American	two Americans
印度人	the Indians	an Indian	two Indians
加拿大人	the Canadians	a Canadian	two Canadians
德国人	the Germans	a Germans	two Germans
英国人	the English	an Englishman	two Englishmen
瑞典人	the Swedish	a Swede	two Swedes



III. 语法惯用法要点运用

1. 单项填空

- (1) It is the ability to do the job _____ matters where you come from or what you are. (2000 全国高考)
A. one B. that C. what D. it
- (2) It was only when I reread his poems recently _____ I began to appreciate their beauty. (1998 全国高考)
A. until B. that C. then D. so
- (3) It was not until 1920 _____ regular radio broadcasts began. (1995 全国高考)
A. while B. which C. that D. since
- (4) I _____ ping-pong quite well, but I haven't had time to play since the new year. (2001 全国高考)
A. play B. will play
C. played D. have played
- (5) —How long has this bookshop been in business?
—_____ 1982. (1994 全国高考)
A. After B. In C. From D. Since
- (6) _____ are industrious and brave.
A. The Chinesees B. The Chinese
C. A Chinese D. Chinesees

2. 短文改错(2003 北京高考)

此题要求改正所给短文中的。对标有题号的每一行作出判断:如无错误,在该行右边横线上画一个勾;如有错误(每行只有一个错误),则按下列情况改正:

此行多一个词，把多余的词用斜线(\)划掉，在该行右边横线上写出该词，并且用斜线划掉。

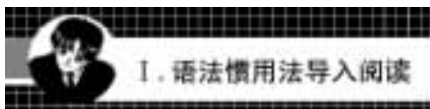
此行缺一个词：在缺词处加一个漏字符号(^)，在该行右边横线上写出该加的词。

此行错一个词：在错的词下划一横线，在该行右边横线上写出改正后的词。

注意：原行没有错的不要改。

Many teachers worry about the effects of television on young people. According to studies ,any children spend more time
1 _____
watching television than they spend in school. Because so 2 _____
much viewing ,children may not be develop the habit of 3 _____
read and the ability to enjoy themselves. No one worries 4 _____
much about the radio program young people listen to , 5 _____
although radios can be very noise. Teachers also wonder about
6 _____
the effects of television commercials. On one year the 7 _____
average child will see 25 ,000 television commercials ,all 8 _____
planned and written by grown-ups to make children to want
9 _____
things that they don't real need. 10 _____

Unit 54



The United States

The United States of America is the fourth largest country in the world. It lies in the middle of the North American continent with an area of more than 9.3 million square kilometers and a population of about 248.7 million, according to the 1990 census count.

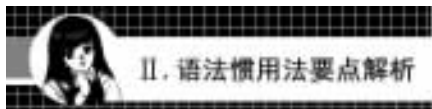
The United States has 50 states and some outlying(边远的) territories(领土) in the Caribbean Sea and the Pacific Ocean.

Except for Alaska and Hawaii, which are geographically separated from the other states, the nation is fortunate to be situated between two great oceans: the Atlantic on the east and the Pacific on the west. It is bordered by Canada on the north and by Mexico on the south. From the east to west coast is a distance of about 4,500 kilometers and about 2,575 kilometers from the northern to the southern borderlines. Most of the boundary line between the United States and Canada lies along 49 degrees north latitude(纬度) while the Tropic of Cancer(回归线) cuts through the northern coast of Cuba which is to the south of U. S. People often liken the nation to China by saying that it is almost on the same latitude as China in the other hemisphere(半球); China extends a bit further south than the U. S. as the

Tropic of Cancer cuts through some of her provinces such as Taiwan , Kwanntung , and Kwanxi in the south.

Of the total land area ,about 29 percent is forested ,26.4 percent is grassland ,and 17 percent is used for crops. The United State also has rich natural resources such as coal , iron , petroleum , lead , copper and other useful metals.

(266 words)



1. except 和 except for 用法

except 和 except for 都可以表达“除……外”的概念，但用法有差别。在 A except B 中，A 和 B 是同级结构。如：

The library is open everyday except Sunday. (everyday 和 Sunday 同级)

Everyone except me got the invitation. (everyone 和 me 同级)

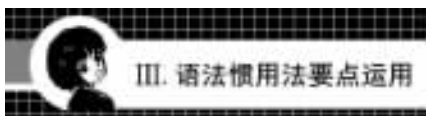
I can answer all the questions except the third one. (all the questions 和 the third one 同级)

而在 A except for B 中，A 和 B 经常是不同级结构，except for 的常见用法如下：

(1) = apart from , with exception of , 意思是“除……之外”。
如：Except for one old lady , the bus was empty.

(2) = except , 通常置于名词或代词之前，也可置于句首。
如：Except for John , everyone was tired.

(3) = if it were not for ; but for , 意思是“若无……”，使用虚拟语气。如：She would have left her husband years ago except for the children.



1. 阅读理解(2001 全国高考)

Many cities around the world today are heavily polluted. Careless methods of production and lack of consumer demand for environment (环境) friendly products have contributed to the pollution problem. One result is that millions of tons of glass , paper , plastic , and metal containers are produced , and these are difficult to get rid of.

However , today , more and more consumers are choosing “green ” and demanding that the products they buy should be safe for the environment. Before they buy a product , they ask questions like these : “ Will this shampoo damage the environment ? ” , “ Can this metal container be reused or can it only be used once ? ”

A recent study showed that two out of five adults now consider the environmental safety of a product before they buy it. This means that companies must now change the way they make and sell their products to make sure that they are “ green , ” that is , friendly to the environment.

Only a few years ago , it was impossible to find green products in supermarkets , but now there are hundreds. Some supermarket products carry labels (标签) to show that the product is green. Some companies have made the manufacturing (生产) of clean and safe products their main selling point and emphasize it in their advertising.

The concern for a safer and cleaner environment is making companies rethink how they do business. No longer will the public accept the old attitude of “ Buy it , use it , throw it away , and forget it. ” The public pressure is on , and gradually business is cleaning up its act.

- (1) What would be the best title for the text ?
- A. Supermarkets and Green Products
 B. Shopping habits Are Changing
 C. Business and People
 D. Business Goes Green
- (2) The underlined word “it” in the fourth paragraph refers to ____.
- A. the manufacturing of green products
 B. a great demand for health foods
 C. a selling point
 D. the company name
- (3) It becomes clear from the text that the driving force (动力) behind green products is ____.
- A. new ways of doing business
 B. public caring for the environment
 C. rapid growth of supermarkets
 D. companies' desire for larger sales
2. 假如你是李晓华，住在江城。你的加拿大笔友 Bob 来信谈到了他所居住的城市，并希望了解你家乡江城的情况。请你用英语写一封回信。回信须包括下表中的内容。(2004 江苏高考)

自然情况	①位于长江边、风景优美、适合居住
成就	②经济发展迅速 ③新建了不少工厂、住房、道路等
存在问题	④水、空气污染 ⑤交通拥挤
对江城发展的看法	⑥(内容由考生自己拟定)

注意：1. 回信中不能使用“江城”以外的地名。

2. 词数 100 左右。信的开头与结尾已为你写好，不计入词数。

参考词汇：经济 economy n.

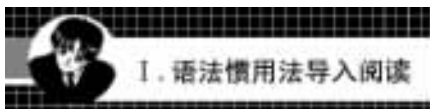
Dear Bob ,

It's very kind of you to write me and let me know about your beautiful city. Now I'd like to tell you something about my hometown Jiangcheng.

Yours ,

Xiaohua

Unit 55



Fight Against Dust and Sand

China , Japan , Mongolia and South Korea plan to join forces to fight dust and sand storms that make a mess of northeastern Asia each year.

Officials and researchers from the four countries met in Beijing last week to discuss the best methods for cooperating in preventing dust and sand storms.

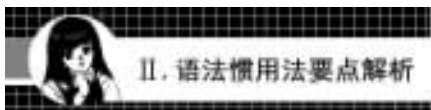
The collaboration(合作) is expected to include monitoring and forecasting of storms , as well as things like afforestation(造林) to reduce their frequency and impact(影响).

China and Mongolia have endorsed(签署) a joint project , while China and Japan are doing a study of the environmental effects of windblown sand. Meanwhile , South Korea and China have a five-year afforestation project in western China.

The storms occur mainly between March and May. That is when strong , cold winds from Siberia blow up tons of yellow dust from the Gobi Desert , sending it as far away as the Korean Peninsula and Japan. Large areas of grassland and forest in north China have been destroyed by humans in recent years , making the sandstorm problem worse.

Beijing was covered in a thick layer of yellow dust several times last year.

(182 words)



1. as well as 用法

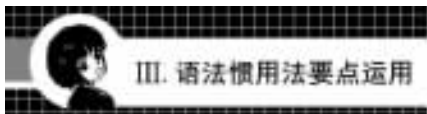
《英语课程标准》“习惯用语和固定搭配”表收有 as well as，并将它解释为“除……之外(也)”。实际上，可以把它看成一个短语介词，意思相当于 in addition to。因为是介词，它后面主要接 NP 或 V-ing P 两种结构。例见本节选文。又如：

He writes stories as well as poems.

She sings as well as playing the piano.

Mary as well as her parents speaks Chinese.

注意：A as well as B 结构充当主语时，在规范英语中，谓语的动词的单复数形式由 A 决定。



1. 情景作文(2003 北京高考)

北京市将举办主题为“Protecting Mother Earth”的中学生英语作文竞赛。你准备根据下列四幅图画写一篇“Story of a Tree”的英语小故事参赛。

注意：(1) 词数 100 左右。

(2) 开头已为你写好。

Once there was a family living in a cabin(小木屋) under a huge tree.



(1)



(2)



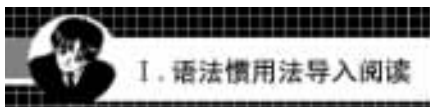
(3)



(4)

Story of a Tree

Unit 56



New Weapon in SARS Battle

THE latest weapon in the global fight against the deadly SARS virus is a high-tech thermal-imaging thermometer (温度计) that automatically checks the temperature of air travelers as they step off the plane.

Walking through the sensor generates (产生) a heat-sensitive image. A burst of red dots on a computer screen depicts (描绘) a fever and nurses stand ready to whisk (挥) passengers away for further tests.

Since last week, the “Infrared Fever Screening System” has greeted passengers at airports in Beijing, Guangzhou, Singapore and other areas hit by SARS.

The Chinese and Singapore governments plan to install more walk-through heat sensors at air and sea ports to screen passengers arriving from SARS-hit regions.

“It doesn’t slow down the process of people stepping off the plane,” said Albert Tjoeng, a spokesman for the Civil Aviation (航空) Authority of Singapore. “You just walk by it and if you have a

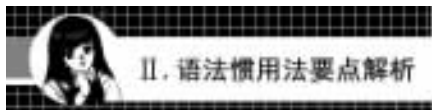
fever a red light will appear. ”

The simple , fast , non-contact screening equipment is based on infrared measurement technology.

It can pick up the electromagnetic waves coming off the body , with energy being transmitted so body temperature can be measured without contact.

But , the infrared (红外线的) measurement is a surface measurement , so lenses must be absolutely clean and free from dust , dirt or steam.

(205 words)



1. 后缀-ly 用法

后缀-ly 活用性很强。首先，它是一个副词后缀，大部分形容词都可以加-ly 可构成副词。其次，它也是一个形容词后缀，相当多的名词加-ly 可以构成形容词，如：friendly , lovely , brotherly 等。再次，还有少数形容词以-ly 结尾，如：lonely , lively , ugly 等。此外，有些以-ly 结尾的词兼具形容词与副词两种词性，如：daily , weekly , monthly , yearly , early。

2. V-ing 结构作主语

V-ing P 结构，或动词-ing 形式可以作主语。例见本节选文。又如：

Seeing is believing.

Reading brings delight.

充当主语的 V-ing P 结构，如果较长，可以移置句末，用形式主语放在句首。如：

It is no use asking her the question.

It is no good waiting so long.

3. intend , plan 和 aim 用法

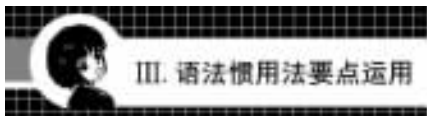
intend , plan , aim 都可以表示决意做某事或达到某个目的的概念。其中 intend 用得最广 , 它可以指模糊的想法或还不成熟的决心 , 也可指为实现暂时或最终目标而下的坚定决心。如 :

I intend to clean out the room sooner or later.

They intend to work hard and save for their retirement.

plan 通常指为达到某个目的(一般较为明确)所进行的筹划或提前安排。如 : I plan to leave on August 15 and have booked a flight for that date.

aim 着重指某个真实、明确的目标、目的或意图 , 并将为此做出努力。如 : I aim to succeed.



1. 完形填空(1995 全国高考)

Washoe is a young chimpanzee (黑猩猩). She is no 1 chimpanzee , though. Scientists are doing a research 2 her. They want to see how civilized (驯化) she can 3 . Already she does many things a human being can do.

For example , she has been learning how to exchange 4 with people. The scientists are teaching her 5 language. When she wants to be picked 6 , Washoe points up with one finger. She rubs her teeth with her finger 7 she wants to brush her teeth. This is done after every meal.

Washoe has also been 8 to think out and find answers to

problems. Once she was put in a 9 with food hanging from the ceiling. It was too high to 10. After she considered the 11, she got a tall box to stand 12. The food was still too high to be reached. Washoe found a 13 pole. Then she climbed onto the 14, grasped the pole, and 15 down the food with the pole.

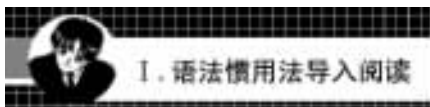
Washoe 16 like a human, too. The scientists keep her in a fully furnished (家具齐全的) house. After a hard 17 in the laboratory, she goes home, 18 she plays with her toys. She 19 enjoys watching television before going to bed.

Scientists hope to 20 more about people by studying our closest, relative(亲属)-chimpanzee.

- (1) A. foolish B. ordinary C. special D. simple
(2) A. for B. by C. to D. on
(3) A. experience B. change C. develop D. become
(4) A. actions B. views C. messages D. feelings
(5) A. sign B. human C. spoken D. foreign
(6) A. out B. at C. on D. up
(7) A. when B. until C. since D. while
(8) A. raised B. trained C. ordered D. led
(9) A. cave B. zoo
 C. room D. museum
(10) A. pull B. see C. eat D. reach
(11) A. problem B. position C. food D. ceiling
(12) A. by B. on C. up D. with
(13) A. straight B. strong C. long D. big
(14) A. wall B. box C. ceiling D. pole
(15) A. knocked B. picked C. took D. shook
(16) A. lives B. acts C. thinks D. plays

- (17) A. task B. lesson C. day D. time
- (18) A. Here B. There C. So D. Then
- (19) A. quite B. already C. even D. still
- (20) A. observe B. discover C. gain D. learn

Unit 57



Women Turn To Online Shopping

Women have jumped ahead of men for the first time in using the Internet to do their holiday shopping , according to a study published last week in the US.

For years men have been more likely to shop on the Internet than women , but during the 2001 holiday season 58 percent of those making online purchases (购买) were women. “ It shows how mainstream(主流) the Internet is becoming ,” said Lee Rainie , director of the Pew Internet and American Life Project group , which carried out the study.

Rainie said it was only a matter of time before women shoppers caught up with men. This is because women traditionally make decisions about spending.

Users were more likely to shop online to save time. Internet users between the ages of 18 and 29 were responsible for some of the most dramatic(显著的) increases in the online gift-buying population this time around.

However , three-quarters of US Internet users did not buy

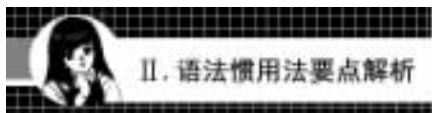
holiday gifts online in 2001. They worried about credit card (信用卡) security, or just compared online prices with off-line prices, then dashed off to the shops to get the best deals.

“But even if shoppers don't buy online, websites are becoming promotion (促销) tools for stores,” said Dan Hess, vice president of ComScore Networks Inc.

Hess said that actually most stores' websites can convince (确信) customers of the security of their credit card numbers. And most are able to ensure that gifts arrive on time.

“It's all about making the shopping experience more efficient, more reliable (可靠的) and more comfortable,” Hess said.

(263 words)



1. ahead of 用法

单词 ahead of 是副词，意思是“在……前”或“向前”。ahead of 是短语介词，意义和用法如下：

(1)表示“在……之前”，例如：Walk ahead of someone.

(2)表示“优于”、“胜于”，如：Our company is well ahead of its main rivals.

(3)表示“(在价格、品质等方面)高于”，如：Their pay offer was well ahead of inflation.

2. likely 用法

likely 既可用做形容词，也可用作副词，《英语课程标准》词汇表只标示了形容词属性。用作形容词时，它最常见的用法是：be likely to VP，表达“有可能做某事”或“有可能发生某事”的概

念。例见本节选文。又如：

It is likely to rain.

He is very likely to invite her to the party.

此外，It is likely that... 也是较常见的用法。如：

It is very likely that he will invite her to the party.

It is quite likely that users will shop online to save time.

3. during 和 in 用法比较

during 和 in 都可以表达“在……期间”的概念。在语法上，两者只有两个区别。

(1) during 可以和表示活动或状态的词或短语搭配，而 in 则不能。如：

We brought you a lot of trouble in our stay here. (×)

We brought you a lot of trouble during our stay here. (√)

(2) during 表达时间迁延概念，并和表达相关意义的词或短语搭配，而 in 不能。如：

The library was closed during the whole of August. (√)

The library was closed in the whole of August. (×)

除此两点外，很多可以用 in 的场合都可以用 during；两者的区别，主要是意义上的。例如：

We'll be on holiday in the summer.

We'll be on holiday during the summer.

表示确指或确定在某个时间段，用 in；表示大致在某个时间范围之内，用 during。因此，在下面语境中，用 during 显得拗口，应该用 in。

That happened in 2003, not in 2002.

We'll usually go on tour holiday in May, but last year we went in October.

David Tebbutt thinks Computer towns are most successful when tied to a computer club but he insists there is an important difference between the two. The clubs are for people who have some computer knowledge already. This frightens away non-experts, who are happier going to Computer towns where there are computers for them to experiment on with experts to encourage them and answer any questions they have. They are not told what to do, they find out. The computer experts have to learn not to tell people about computers, but have to be able to answer all questions people ask. People don't have to learn computer terms (术语), but the experts have to explain in plain language. The computers are becoming "people-literate".

(1) Which of the following is David Tebbutt's ideas on the relationship between people and computers?

- A. Computer learning should be made easier.
- B. There should be more computer clubs for experts.
- C. People should work harder to master computer use.
- D. Computers should be made cheaper so that people can afford them.

(2) We can infer from the text that "computer-literate" means ____

- A. being able to afford a computer
- B. being able to write computer programs
- C. working with the computer and finding out its value
- D. understanding the computer and knowing how to use it

(3) The underlined word "it" in the second paragraph refers to the idea that Computer towns ____.

- A. help to set up more computer clubs
- B. bring people to learn to use computers

C. bring more experts to work together

D. help to sell computers to the public

(4) David Tebbutt started Computer town UK with the purpose of

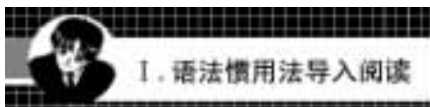
A. making better use of computer experts

B. improving computer programs

C. increasing computer sales

D. popularising computers

Unit 58



Birds Suffer From Oil

The bird hadn't done anything wrong. But it was blackened, covered in oil and unable to fly. Sticky(粘的), oil-covered birds were the most obvious result of an oil spill(泄漏) off the coast of northern Spain last week.

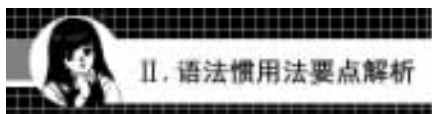
A tanker which was carrying 77,000 tons of oil started to leak after getting damaged in bad storms. It finally broke into two and sank last Wednesday. The ship, called Prestige, sank with most of its oil still on board. But before it sank, it spilt 9,000 tons of oil into the sea and polluted about 200 kilometers of coastline. The ship now lies on the sea floor where scientists are hoping that the remaining oil will sink and harden on the sea bed. They hope that if it does this it will prevent any further environmental damage. If this fails to happen, some environmentalists have warned that the Prestige oil spill could be the worst yet.

Many of Spain's beaches are turning black and fish and birds are dying. The area affected by the spill has a very large wildlife population. Up to 18 species(种类) of bird have been harmed.

When a bird is covered in oil ,its feathers are not able to repel(拍击) water. It loses body heat and becomes weak and dehydrated(脱水).

Fishermen from the area say pollution will kill the barnacles(北极 鹅) and shellfish that the birds usually eat. They say it could take years for the area's rich shellfish supply to recover along the damaged coastline. The shellfish that survive(幸存) will be smaller and may not be able to reproduce. The damage from the spill will last for years.

(270 words)



1. hope 用法

hope 可以用作名词，也可用作动词。用作动词的常见用法有：

(1) hope + 从句。例如：I hope you'll come and see us when you are in London.

(2) hope + to VP。例如：I hope to be a doctor. (T28)

(3) hope + for NP。例如：People hope for the best.

动词 hope 不用否定式，相关否定通过后接部分的否定体现，如：

I don't hope so. (×)

I hope not. (√)

I don't hope to be a doctor. (×)

I hope not to be a doctor. (√)

I don't hope that she dislikes the house. (×)

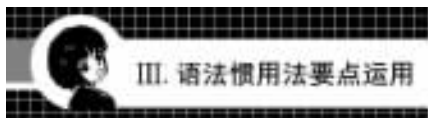
I hope that she doesn't dislike the house. (√)

2. yet, still, already 用法

yet, still 和 already 都可以表达“已经”、“还”、“仍然”等概念,但用法有区别。yet 通常用于疑问句或否定句,常位于句末。例如: Is the coffee cold yet? still 常表示某种动作或状态持续超越预期时间,可用于各种句子。例如: My fingers still hurt. already 通常用于肯定句,表示某种动作或状态的早于预期时间发生或到来。例如: The tea is already cold.

3. 前缀 un-用法

前缀 un-, 是一个高频的词缀,活用性极高,可以置于形容词、副词、名词与动词之前构成反义词。例见本节选文。又如《英语课程标准》词汇表所收词汇: unable, uncertain, undivided, undo, unemployment, unfair, unfit, unfold, unfortunate, unfortunately, unhappy, unhealthy, unknown, unlike, unmarried, unpleasant, unsafe, unsuccessful, untrue, unusual 等。



1. 阅读理解(1997 全国高考)

America is growing older. Fifty years ago, only 4 out of every 100 people in the United States were 65 or older. Today, 10 out of every 100 Americans are over 65. The aging of the population will affect (影响) American society in many ways—education, medicine, and business. Quietly, the graying of America has made us a very different society—one in which people have a quite different idea of what kind of behavior (行为) is suitable (合适) at various ages. A person's age no longer tells you anything about his/her social position,

marriage or health. There's no longer a particular year in which one goes to school or goes to work or gets married or starts a family. The social clock that kept us on time and told us when to go to school , get a job , or stop working isn't as strong as it used to be. It doesn't surprise us to hear of a 29-year-old university president or a 35-year-old grandmother , or a 70-year-old man who has become a father for the first time. Public ideas are changing. Many people say , " I am much younger than my mother-or my father-was at my age. " No one says " Act your age " anymore. We've stopped looking with surprise at older people who act in youthful ways.

(1) It can be learnt from the text that the aging of the population in America _____.

- A. has made people feel younger
- B. has changed people's social position
- C. has changed people's understanding of age
- D. has slowed down the country's social development

(2) The underlined word " one " refers to _____.

- A. a society
- B. America
- C. a place
- D. population

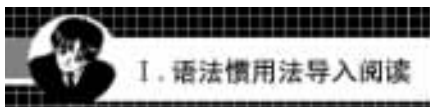
(3) " Act your age " means people should _____.

- A. be active when they are old
- B. do the right thing at the right age
- C. show respect for their parents young or old
- D. take more physical exercise suitable to their age

(4) If a 25-year-old man becomes general manager of a big firm , the writer of the text would most probably consider it _____.

- A. normal
- B. wonderful
- C. unbelievable
- D. unreasonable

Unit 59



Water Worries

No matter who we are , where we are , or what we do , we all depend on water. It is the source of all life and we need it every day. But with the world's growing population and fast developing economies , the earth's water resources are drying up fast. As many as 7 billion people throughout the world could face a water shortage(水资源短缺) by 2050 if the present situation continues. By then , the global (全球的) population is expected to reach 9.3 billion. This alarming (令人担忧的) situation was shown in a United Nations (UN) report just ahead of World Water Day , which falls on March 22.

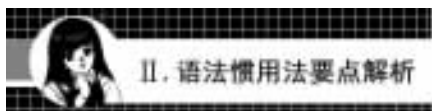
But , how can the earth , of which about 70 per cent is covered by water , suffer a water shortage ?

Well , 97.5 per cent of our water resources are salty—it's sea water. And it requires huge amounts of money to make use of it for drinking and irrigation. On top of that , nearly 90 per cent of all the fresh water is ice and snow , and sitting in Polar Regions(极地) or on high mountains where it's difficult for people to reach.

And still , water is wasted every day. Taps are left running ,

showers last too long and summer water fights waste valuable drinking water. But more and more people are joining the fight to protect and save water. The UN first set aside World Water Day in 1993. This year's theme(主题) is Water for the Future.

(238 words)



1. “no matter + 疑问词”用法

固定搭配“no matter + 疑问词”的意义和用法相当于“疑问词 + 后缀 ever”，即 no matter what = whatever；no matter who = whoever；no matter when = whenever；no matter where = wherever；no matter which = whichever；no matter how = however。例见本节选文。又如：No matter what happened, he would not mind. 但是，要注意一点：“no matter + 疑问词”不能引导主语从句和宾语从句；引导主语从句时用“疑问词 + 后缀 ever”。例如：Whatever is right.

2. “It is + Adj. + for NP”和“ It is + Adj. + of NP”用法

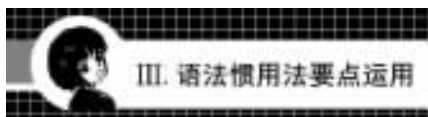
“It is + Adj. + for NP”和“ It is + Adj. + of NP”用法有区别。

(1)“It is + Adj. + for NP”常用于表示事物的特征或特点，句型中的形容词，如 easy, hard, difficult, interesting, impossible 等，表示相关事物的属性。例如：It's very difficult for him to study two languages at the same time.

(2)“It is + Adj. + of NP”一般表示人物的性格与品德，句型中的形容词，如 good, kind, nice, clever, foolish, right 等，表示相关人物的感情或态度属性，例如：It's very nice of you to help me.

3. 主语从句

在复合句中用作主语的从句,是主语从句。引导主语从句的有:that, whether(连词); what, whatever, who, whoever, which(代词); when, where, how, why(副词)等。如: Whatever is right.



- (1) _____, I have to put it away and focus my attention on study this week. (2004 上海高考)
- A. However the story is amusing
B. No matter amusing the story is
C. However amusing the story is
D. No matter how the story is amusing
- (2) _____ much advice I gave him, he did exactly what he wanted to do. (1996 全国高考)
- A. How
B. Whatever
C. However
D. No matter
- (3) It is generally considered unwise to give a child _____ he or she wants. (1997 全国高考)
- A. however
B. whatever
C. whichever
D. whenever
- (4) It was so cold that they kept the fire _____ all night. (1991 全国高考)
- A. to burn B. burn C. burning D. burned

2. 短文改错(2004 广西高考)

此题要求改正所给短文中的错误。对标有题号的每一行做出

判断：如无错误，在该行右边横线上画一个勾(√)；如有错误(每行只有一个错误)，则按下列情况改正：

该行多一个词：把多余的词用斜线(\)划掉，在该行右边横线上写出该词，并用斜线划掉。

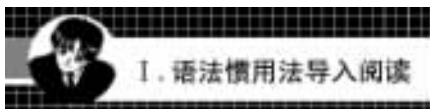
该行缺一个词：在缺词处加一个漏字符号(∧)，在该行右边横线上写出该加的词。

该行错一个词；在错的词下划一横线，在该行右边横线上写出改正后的词。

注意：原行没有错的不要改。

You can find all kinds information in just a	1 _____
few minute on the Internet. It's like going to a	2 _____
huge library without have to walk around to find	3 _____
your books. Recently even though , many people	4 _____
have been discussing the dangers of the Internet.	5 _____
They have been reports in America about people	6 _____
trying to steal person information for bad	7 _____
purposes. Finding information on the Net is	
easily. But not all information are good to	8 _____
society. For example , you can find such	9 _____
information like how to kill people. The problem	10 _____
will become more serious in the future.	

Unit 60



WTO Entry Could Change Education

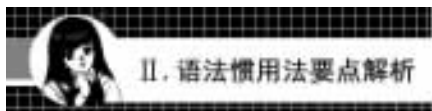
What will colleges and universities be like with China's entry to the World Trade Organization (WTO)?

China foresees major reforms in its higher education system. These include important changes in curricula(课程) and the opening of China's higher education to various businesses. According to the Ministry of Education (MOE), some Chinese universities are changing their curricula. By 2004, 5 to 10 per cent of the major courses at local colleges and universities will be given in English, including information technology, bio-technology(生物技术), finance(金融) and law. Meanwhile, the MOE has stepped up efforts to produce new English textbooks. It also hopes to introduce original textbooks(原版教材) from English-speaking countries to Chinese universities. "Middle school students need to strengthen their spoken English and listening comprehension," said an English department professor at Beijing Normal University. "The schools also need to urgently(急切地) enlarge their English readings."

For those who wish to find a job or improve themselves there will be short-term work training and online training. This will especially benefit those interested in business administration, international trade and other specific fields.

With the WTO entry, the Chinese Government will consider inviting investments (投资) from foreign businesses. More foreign universities and colleges will be allowed into the Chinese market. This will cause big changes in China's higher education system.

(210 words)



1. wish 用法

动词 wish, 最常见的用法有五种:

(1) wish to VP. 例如: I wish to make a complaint.

(2) wish sb/sth to VP. 例如: Is there anything else you wish me to bring you?

(3) wish + O(宾语) + NP(直宾). 例如:

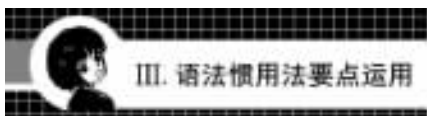
They wish us a happy new year.

Wish you a happy birthday.

(4) wish + O(宾语) + C(宾补). 其中宾补可以是形容词、副词或介词, 例如: Do you wish your coffee black or white, Sir?

(5) wish + (宾语)从句. 例如: I wish that I had never met you!

wish 后接的宾语从句, 经常是虚拟语气, 表示与事实相反的情况, 或表示将来不太可能实现的愿望。从句中的谓语动词如用过去式, 则表示目前未能实现的愿望, 如: I wish I were as tall as you. ; 如用过去完成式, 则表示过去未能实现的愿望, 如: He wished he hadn't said that. ; 如用 would/could + 动词原形, 则表示将来不大可能实现的愿望。如: I wish it would rain tomorrow.



1. 在全班范围内组织一次辩论赛，一方支持像韩寒一样的偏才 (talent)，认为成才不一定要进大学；另一方认为现代教育应培养全才 (all-round genius)，只有进入大学才能大有作为。
2. 补全下列对话，要求语句通顺、意思连贯、符合情景。所写的句子必须与所给的标点符号一致，答案写在对话下面的空格里。(1997 上海高考)

M : You don't look happy , Cathy. 1 ?

C : I didn't do well in the chemistry test.

M : Really ? I could hardly believe you not doing well in chemistry. I know 2 . What happened this time ?

C : 3 . I found all the questions quite easy and I finished the test in no time.

M : Yes , it is one of your weaknesses.

C : Yes , 4 . I made some very stupid mistakes that I shouldn't have made.

M : Well , next time 5 .

C : Yes , I 've certainly learned a lesson.

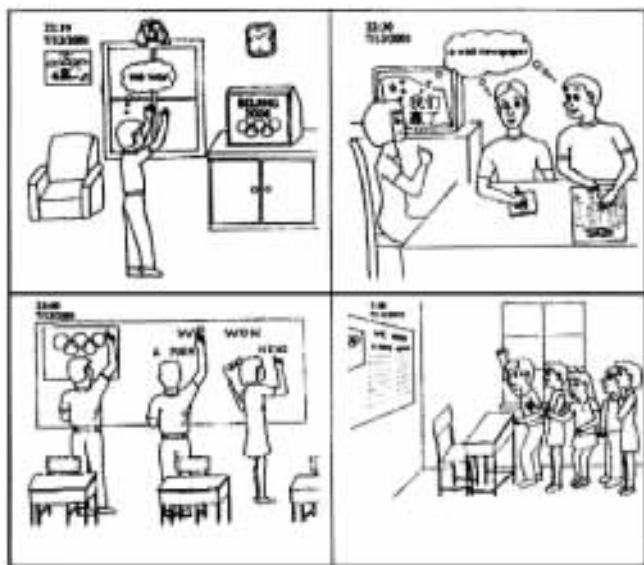
3. 书面表达(2002 北京春季高考)

2001 年 7 月 13 日，你的美国朋友给你写了一封信，祝贺北京申奥成功。收到信后，你给他写了一封回信，介绍了你们是如何庆祝申奥成功的。回信应包括下面图画所示内容，并邀请他在 2008 年来中国。

注意：1. 词数 100 左右；2. 信的开头和结尾已写好。

生词：1. ……竞标成功 win the bid for. . .

2. 出墙报 put up a wall newspaper

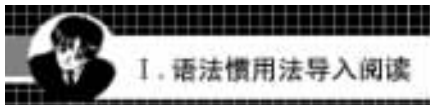


Dear Bill ,

Very glad to receive your letter of July 13.

Sincerely yours ,
Zhang Hua

Unit 61



China

China is located(位于) in the eastern part of Asia and is the third largest country in the world , after Russia and Canada. It covers an area of 3 , 696 , 100 square miles , stretching about 3 , 100 miles from east to west and 3400 miles from north to south. Its 8700-mile coastline is encircled(环绕) from north to south by the Yellow Sea , the East China Sea , the Taiwan Strait , and the South China Sea.

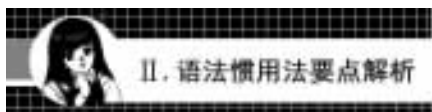
China has the oldest continuing civilization in the world , dating back more than 4000 years. The first of the mythical(神话中的) emperor of China was Fu His ; his birth is said to have occurred in the 29th century BC. By the time of Christ , the Chinese had lived under a succession of ruling families , called dynasties , that had unified the country. The Great Wall of China was built and rebuilt through the centuries to keep out invaders(入侵者) , who eventually overran(侵占) much of China in the 1600s. However , during the Middle Ages , science and the arts flourished and were more advanced than in Europe.

The Chinese were the first to develop paper , printing , compass , silk , and gunpowder. Around 1300 , Marco Polo and other travelers

to China brought back goods and tales of riches. They marveled at the Chinese skill in painting, poetry, drama, and pottery.

The country was plagued(使受灾祸) for many years by poverty, revolutions, and wars. After Dr. Sun Yat-sen overthrew(推翻) the last dynasty and made China a republic in 1912, there was more conflict and competition for power. The communists, led by Mao Tse-tung, took control of the country in 1949. China, now called the People's Republic of China, has grown to be a powerful, communist state.

(278 words)



1. say, tell, speak 和 talk 用法

动词 say, tell, speak 和 talk 都可以表达“说”的概念,但具体意义和用法有区别。say 着重表达说的内容,以内容为宾语而不能以人作宾语。如:He said a few words and sat down. tell 着重“告诉”,后面可以接一个宾语,也可以跟双宾语。如:He told us a funny story. speak 着重说话动作本身,不强调所说内容,如:He spoke much, but said nothing. 另外,用 speak 也表示说或讲某种语言。如:She speaks English very well. talk 通常指在一起谈话、聊天或讲话。

2. more 特殊用法

more 有较多特殊用法,常见的有:

(1) the more... the more... (越.....就越.....);

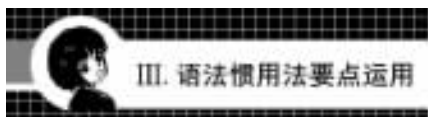
(2) more B than A(与其说 A 不如说 B),如:He is more lazy than slow at his work. ;

(3) no more... than... (只有;与.....一样.....,不比.....

多);

(4) more than(多于;不只是,非常)。如:She is more than kind to us all.

(5) not more than(至多;不超过)。如:They have made not more than five kinds of machines.



1. 单项选择

(1) Allen had to call a taxi because the box was _____ to carry all the way home. (2003 全国高考)

- A. much too heavy B. too much heavy
C. heavy too much D. too heavy much

(2) We thought of selling this old furniture, but we've decided to _____ . It might be valuable. (2002 全国高考)

- A. hold on to B. keep up with
C. turn to D. look after

(3) Many people have helped with canned food, however, the food bank needs _____ for the poor. (2001 北京高考)

- A. more B. much C. many D. most

(4) —Are the new rules working?

—Yes. _____ books are stolen. (1999 全国高考)

- A. Few B. More C. Some D. None

(5) _____ students are required to take part in the boat race. (2004 浙江高考)

- A. Ten strong young Chinese B. Ten Chinese strong young
C. Chinese ten young strong D. Young strong ten Chinese

(6) How was your recent visit to Qingdao ?

—It was great. We visited some friends , and spent the days at the _____ seaside. (1995 全国高考)

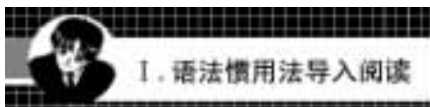
- A. few last sunny B. last few sunny
C. last sunny few D. few sunny last

(7) The _____ house smells as if it hasn't been lived in for years.

(2004 江苏高考)

- A. little white wooden B. little wooden white
C. white wooden little D. wooden white little

Unit 62



Ancient Egypt

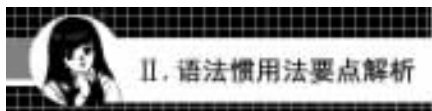
The ancient Egyptians thought of Egypt as being divided into two types of land , the “ black land ” and the “ red land ”. The “ black land ” was the fertile(肥沃的) land on the banks of the Nile. The ancient Egyptians used this land for growing their crops. This was the only land in ancient Egypt that could be farmed because a layer(层) of rich , black silt was deposited(沉淀) there every year after the Nile flooded. The “ red land ” was the barren (贫瘠的) desert that protected Egypt on two sides. These deserts separated ancient Egypt from neighboring countries and invading armies. They also provided the ancient Egyptians with a source for precious metals and semi-precious stones.

The most powerful person in ancient Egypt was the pharaoh(法老). The pharaoh was the political and religious leader of the Egyptian people , holding the titles :“ Lord of the Two Lands ” and “ High Priest of Every Temple ”. As “ Lord of the Two Lands ” the pharaoh was the ruler of Upper and Lower Egypt. He owned all of the land , made laws , collected taxes , and defended Egypt against

foreigners. As “ High Priest of Every Temple ”, the pharaoh represented the gods on Earth. He performed rituals and built temples to honor the gods.

The ancient Egyptians built pyramids as tombs for the pharaohs and their queens. The pharaohs were buried in pyramids of many different shapes and sizes from before the beginning of the Old Kingdom to the end of the Middle Kingdom. There are about eighty pyramids known today from ancient Egypt. The three largest and best-preserved(保存) of these were built at Giza at the beginning of the Old Kingdom. The most well-known of these pyramids was built for the pharaoh Khufu. It is known as the “ Great Pyramid ”.

(288 words)



1. 形容词顺序

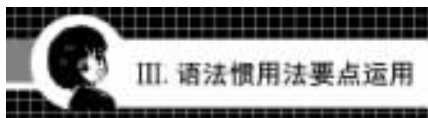
用多个形容词修饰名词时，其顺序一般为：限定词(包括冠词、物主代词、指示代词、不定代词等)+数词(包括序数词、基数词)+描绘形容词(短词在前，长词在后)+表示特征的形容词(包括大小、长短、形状、新旧、年龄等)+表示颜色的形容词+表示类别的形容词+表示类别的名词(作修饰语)+名词中心词。如果出现一个以上的限定词，它们之间的搭配关系通常是表示特指或泛指的限制词在前，表示数量的限定词在后。例如：the man's first two interesting little red French oil paintings.

2. separate 和 divide 用法

动词 separate 和 divide 都可以表达“分开”的概念，但含义和用法有区别。separate 表示把不定型混合体中某种东西分离出

来,或把紧密结合或混在一起的东西分开。如: Separate the whites and yolks of three eggs. 作不及物动词时, separate 也可强调自愿取舍, 如: In order to go on excursions of their own, some members of the tour wished to separate from the main group.

divide 指把一个整体分成若干部分。如: Please divide the apple into halves. 此外, divide 也可指在一个组织成员之间按数量进行分配, 不涉及分配数量时, 这个词有等量分配的含义。如: Even though I put up more capital than you, let's divide the profits between us. (即使我提供的资本比你多, 让我们平分利润。)



1. 阅读理解(2003 全国高考)

Tristan da Cunha, a 38-square-mile island, is the farthest inhabited island in the world, according to the Guinness Book of Records. It is 1,510 miles southwest of its nearest neighbor, St. Helena, and 1,950 miles west of Africa. Discovered by the Portuguese admiral (葡萄牙海军上将) of the same name in 1506, and settled in 1810, the island belongs to Great Britain and has a population of a few hundred.

Coming in a close second—and often wrongly mentioned as the most distant land—is Easter Island, which lies 1,260 miles east of its nearest neighbor, Pitcairn Island, and 2,300 miles west of South America.

The mountainous 64-square-mile island was settled around the 5th century, supposedly by people who were lost at sea. They had no connection with the outside world for more than a thousand years,

giving them plenty of time to build more than 1,000 huge stone figures, called moai, for which the island is most famous.

On Easter Sunday, 1,722, however, settlers from Holland moved in and gave the island its name. Today, 2,000 people live on the Chilean territory (智利领土). They share one street, a small airport, and a few hours of television per day.

(1) It can be learned from the text that the island of Tristan da Cunha

_____.

- A. was named after its discoverer
- B. got its name from Holland settlers
- C. was named by the British government
- D. got its name from the Guinness Book of Records

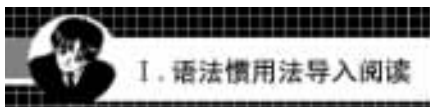
(2) Which of the following is most famous for moai?

- A. Tristan da Cunha
- B. Pitcairn Island
- C. Easter Island
- D. St. Helena

(3) Which country does Easter Island belong to?

- A. Britain
- B. Holland
- C. Portugal
- D. Chile

Unit 63



The Wooden Horse of Troy

Seeking to gain entrance into Troy , clever Odysseus (some say with the aid of Athena) ordered a large wooden horse to be built. Its insides were to be hollow so that soldiers could hide within it.

Once the statue(雕像) had been built by the artist Epeius , a number of the Greek soldiers , along with Odysseus , climbed inside. The rest of the Greek fleet sailed away , so as to deceive(欺骗) the Trojans.

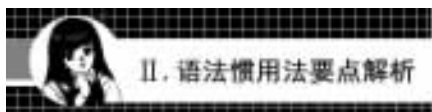
One man , Sinon , was left behind. When the Trojans came to marvel at the huge creation , Sinon pretended to be angry with the Greeks , stating that they had deserted him. He told the Trojans that the wooden horse was safe and would bring luck to the Trojans(特洛伊人).

Only two people , Laocoon and Cassandra , spoke out against the horse , but they were ignored(忽视). The Trojans celebrated what they thought was their victory , and dragged the wooden horse into Troy.

That night , after most of Troy was asleep , Sinon let the Greek

soldiers out from the wooden horse , and they killed all Trojans wherever they found them. Even the male children of Trojan heroes were killed by the Greeks. Meneleos determined to kill Helen but in front of her beauty , he gave up. After the Greeks , plundered(抢劫) and burned Troy was left.

(212 words)



1. to VP 结构内部变化

传统语法,大多介绍动词不定式的时态和语态变化。其实,说 to VP 结构内部变化可能更确切,因为 to 后面的 VP 包括表示时态或语态的助动词和相应的 V-ed 形式与 V-ing 形式。to VP 结构内部,可以包含如下结构:

时态/语态	主动	被动
一般式	to VP	to be V-ed P
进行式	to be V-ing P	
完成式	to have V-ed P	to have been V-ed P
完成进行式	to have been V-ing P	

(1) 现在时:一般现在时表示的动词,有时与谓语动词表示的动作同时发生,有时发生在谓语动词的动作之后。例如:I hope to see you again. =I hope that I'll see you again. 我希望再见到你。

(2) 完成时:表示的动作发生在谓语动词表示的动作之前。

例如：I'm sorry to have given you so much trouble.

(3) 进行时：表示动作正在进行，与谓语动词表示的动作同时发生。例如：He seems to be eating something.

(4) 完成进行时：例如：She is known to have been wreaking on the problem for many years.

2. V-ed P 结构作后置定语

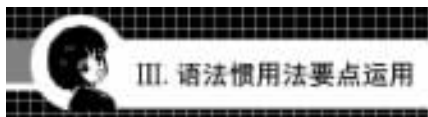
V-ed P 结构可以作后置定语，表示它修饰的词的被动状态或受动情况，相当于一个被动语态的定语从句。例如：

Most of the people invited to the party were famous scientists.

= Most of the people who were invited to the party were famous scientists.

3. 目的状语从句

目的状语从句可以由 that(以便), so that(为了,使得), in order that(这样.....就), lest(以免,以防), in case(以防,以备万一)等词引导。由这些词引导的从句谓语常带有 can/could, may/might, shall/should 和 will/would 等情态动词。目的状语从句多放在主句之后,例如选文中的：“Its insides were to be hollow so that soldiers could hide within it。” so that 和 in order that 引导的目的状语从句如果要加以强调,可置于句首。例如：So that his son can study in peace and quiet, the man turned off the TV.



1. 单项填空

(1) After his journey front abroad, Richard Jones returned home, _____. (2004 上海高考)

A. exhausting

B. exhausted

C. being exhausted D. having exhausted

(2) My advisor encouraged _____ a summer course to improve my writing skills. (2004 北京高考)

A. for me taking B. me taking

C. for me to take D. me to take

(3) You were silly not _____ your car. (2004 湖南高考)

A. to lock B. to have locked

C. locking D. having locked

(4) I _____ you not to move my dictionary—now I can't find it. (2004 四川高考)

A. asked B. ask

C. was asking D. had asked

(5) An army spokesman stressed that all the soldiers had been ordered _____ clear warnings before firing any shots. (2003 上海高考)

A. to issue B. being issued

C. to have issued D. to be issued

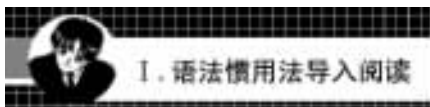
2. 阅读理解(2000 全国高考)

New York , 10 November 5 : 27pm , yesterday. Biggest power failure in the city's history.

Thousands of people got stuck in lifts. Martin Saltzman spent three hours between the 21st and 22nd floors of the Empire State Building. " There were twelve of us. But no one panicked. We passed the time telling stories and playing word games. One man wanted to smoke but we didn't let him. Firemen finally got us out. "

" It was the best night we've ever had. " said Angela Carraro , who runs an Italian restaurant on 42nd Street. " We had lots candles on the tables and the waiters were carrying candles on their trays. The place was full and all night , in fact , for after we had closed , we let the

Unit 64



Bill Gates

He's the most famous businessman in the world. Many pages have been written about how he has dominated(统治) the revolution in personal computing. But we know little about him as a person. Here's a story which may show his personality. When Bill Gates was in the sixth grade, his parents decided that he needed some kind of help. He was at war with his mother Mary, an extrovert(个性外向的人) woman who believed that he should do what she told him. She would call him to dinner from his bedroom, which she had given up trying to make him clean, but he wouldn't respond.

"What are you doing?" she once asked him.

"I'm thinking," Bill answered.

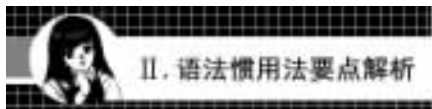
"You're thinking?"

"Yes, Mom, I'm thinking," he said aggressively. "Have you tried thinking?"

Finally, his parents decided to send him to a psychologist(心理学家). The psychologist concluded that Bill was extremely clever. After a one-year session and a large amount of tests, the psychologist told Bill's

parents: "You're going to lose. You had better adjust to it because there's no use trying to punish him. It's useless to try to compete with him." A lot of computer companies have concluded the same.

(195 words)



1. little 和 few 否定用法

短语 a little(单数不可数,或修饰单数不可数名词)和 a few(可数复数,或修饰可数名词复数)表达“有一些”的肯定概念。而不带冠词的单词 little 和 few 表达的往往是“没什么”或“没几个”的否定概念。例如:

We know a little about him. (知道一些。)

We know little about him. (几乎不知道什么。)

The book is difficult, but a few people understand it. (有些人懂。)

The book is difficult; few people understand it. (没几个人懂。)

2. It's no use V-ing P 和 There is no use V-ing P 用法

It's no use V-ing P 和 There is no use V-ing P 两个句型都表达“做某事无用”的概念,两者同义。这两个句型都可以变为疑问句。

Is it any use trying to do that?

Is there any use trying to do that?

V-ing P 结构,可以用代词或物主代词或名词的所有格形式做逻辑主语。如:

It's no use your talking to her—let me do it.

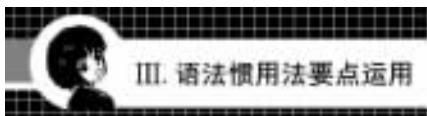
表达类似意义的句型还有: There is no sense in V-ing P;

There is no point in V-ing P ; There is no need to VP。如：

There is no sense in talking to her.

There is no point in phoning him.

There is no need to ask for help—we can manage it.



1. 完形填空(2004 上海高考)

In Renee Smith's classroom, attendance is up. Trips to the headmaster's office are down and students are handing in assignments on time. The Springfield High School teacher says she has seen great 1 since adding a few new students to her class—five Labrador puppies and their father.

The seven 2 students in Smith's class have a history of discipline 3. But since they've started teaching the dogs obedience(顺从), their own 4 has improved. A dog trainer Chuck Reynolds 5 the students a new trick each week that they then work on with the puppies. At night, the dogs go home with the staff members who have raised them. They get dropped off in the morning, 6 a parent would take a child to day care.

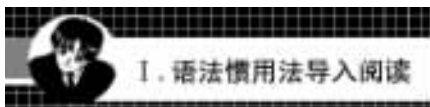
Smith said she came up with the idea when her dog had puppies and she say, how 7 her own children responded to them. She consulted with school psychologist Kristin Edinger, 8 they took the idea—along with letters from students 9 the program—to the school board. A pet therapist said, "What you are trying to teach is 10 and that there are consequences for the decisions you make."

(1) A. promotion

B. progress

- C. disturbance
- (2) A. human
- C. new
- (3) A. problems B. questions
- (4) A. habit
- C. action
- (5) A. guides B. teaches
- (6) A. such as
- C. so that
- (7) A. well
- C. poorly
- (8) A. but B. so
- (9) A. revising
- C. opposing
- (10) A. self-criticism
- C. self-control
- D. disappointment
- B. dog
- D. Labrador
- C. issues D. troubles
- B. attitude
- D. behaviour
- C. permits D. aids
- B. much as
- D. even if
- B. quickly
- D. carelessly
- C. and D. because
- B. describing
- D. supporting
- B. self-respect
- D. self-importance

Unit 65



Clothes

People have worn clothes from the very earliest times. The first clothes were probably animal skins. Later, the wool of sheep, camels, and other animals was woven into cloth and used in different ways. A wool suit traps air in its cloth, and since heat does not easily pass through air such a suit is warm on a chilly day. But the Bedouin, the Arabs of the hot desert, also wear robes(长袍) of wool. It keeps the hot sun off during the day, and holds in the body heat during the cold night.

Cotton was used in India 2000 years ago. Cotton does not hold in the heat as wool does, and is good for summer clothing. Moths(飞蛾) will not attack it. When Eli Whitney invented the cotton gin(轧棉机) to take the seeds out of cotton fiber, it became a cheap cloth.

The ancient Egyptians and Greeks made clothing of lines, the fiber of the flax(亚麻) plant, and of wool. Lines is expensive; and some people prefer it to cotton and use it in the same ways, for bed-sheets, under-wear, handkerchiefs, shirts, and suits.

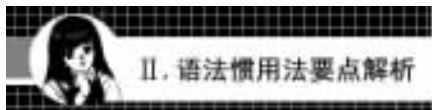
The Chinese have been using silk for thousands of years. Its fibers

come from the cocoons of the silkworm. Silk is light , strong , and pleasant to touch. It is rather expensive , and people often use man-made fibers such as rayon or nylon in its place.

Leather and furs are important too. Leather can be so thick and hard that it has been used for armor(盔甲). Also it can be made into suede(麂皮) , which is flexible and soft. Many animal furs are made into linings for warm coats , or are made into the coats themselves.

Tailors have made these materials into many beautiful forms throughout history.

(289 words)



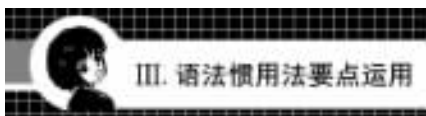
1. 短语 be made of , be made from , be made out of 和 be made into 用法

短语 be made of , be made from , be made out of 和 be made into 意义和用法有区别。be made of 和 be made from 都可译为“由……制成”；两者区别在于 :be made of 表示从成品中可以看出原材料；而 be made from 表示从成品中看不出原材料。两者在口语中均可用 be made out of 替换。例如：

This table is made of wood.

This kind of cloth is made from cotton.

be made into 的意思是“被制成……”，其主动形式是 make... into...。例如：Also it can be made into suede , which is flexible and soft.



1. 完形填空(2003 上海高考)

People wear hats for three main reasons: protection, communication, and decoration.

Protection. People first began to wear hats to 1 themselves from the climate. In hot, sunny climates, wide-edged hats provide 2 from the sun. In cold climates, people often wear wool hats. In some regions, people wear a variety of protective hats, 3 the season. They may wear a wool hat in winter, a rain hat in spring or fall and a wide-edged hat in summer. Hats also provide protection in certain 4. Construction workers, football players, military personnel, and people in many other fields wear metal or plastic helmets(头盔) for protection from 5.

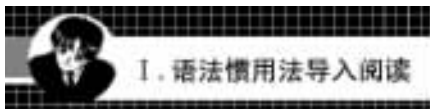
Communication. Hats can communicate various things about the people who wear them. The hats of coal miners, cowboys and firemen indicate the wearer's 6. Students may wear a mortarboard(学位帽) to show they are graduating from high school in college.

Decoration. Most people wear a hat that they believe makes them look attractive, 7 the hat's main purpose may be protection or communication. Many protective hats are attractive and stylish. Even the caps of police officers and military personnel are designed to 8 the wearer's appearance. Certain decorative hats are worn as a (n) 9. In Scotland, for example, people wear a cap called a tam-o'-shanter that is part of their national costume(服装). Many people change their style of hat from time to time because they feel

more 10 when keeping up with the latest fashion.

- (1) A. defend B. protect C. prevent D. hide
- (2) A. shade B. shadow C. security D. cover
- (3) A. resulting from B. basing upon
C. relating to D. depending on
- (4) A. seasons B. climates
C. activities D. communities
- (5) A. injury B. destruction
C. harm D. pollution
- (6) A. experience B. occupation
C. personality D. education
- (7) A. as B. unless C. though D. because
- (8) A. change B. increase C. display D. improve
- (9) A. tradition B. label C. honour D. fashion
- (10) A. sociable B. informal C. attractive D. noble

Unit 66



Youth

Youth is not just a stage of life ; it is a state of mind. It is not a matter of rosy cheeks , red lips and supple knees ; it is a matter of the will , a quality of the imagination , a vigor(活力) of the emotions. It is the freshness of the deep spring of life.

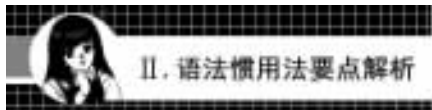
Youth means the predominance(优势) of courage over timidity(胆怯) , of adventure over the love of ease. This often exists in a man of sixty more than in a boy of twenty. Nobody grows old merely by living a number of years. We grow old by deserting our ideals.

Years may wrinkle(使起皱纹) the skin , but to give up enthusiasm(热情) wrinkles the soul. Worry , doubt , self-distrust , fear and despair—these bow the head and turn the growing spirit back to dust.

Whether sixty or sixteen , there is in every human being's heart the love of wonder , the sweet amazement of the stars and the starlike things , the undaunted(勇往直前的) challenge of events , the unflinching childlike appetite for what-nest and the joy of the game of living.

You are as young as your faith , as old as your doubt , as young as your self-confidence(自信) , as old as your fear , as young as your hope , as old as your despair.

(208 words)



1. 抽象名词 youth 用法

抽象名词 youth,意思是“青春”或“青年时期”,无单复数变化,作主语时,谓语动词用第三人称单数形式,例如本节选文中句子:“Youth is not just a stage of life ; it is a state of mind.”。“youth”可以用作具体名词,指“青年人”,有单复数变化。如: The fighting was started by some youths. 另外,youth 还可以与定冠词 the 并用,构成集合名词,统指“年轻人,青年”,作主语时,谓语动词常用复数形式。例如: The youth of the country are being ignored by politicians.

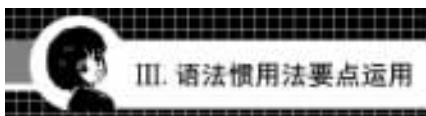
英语中还有一些词,既可以用作抽象名词,又可以用作具体名词。如收入《英语课程标准》词汇表中的 life 和 literature 等。life 用作抽象名词时,表示抽象的生命概念;用作具体名词时,表示具体的生命体。literature 用作抽象名词时,表示整体的或抽象的文学;用作具体名词时,表示具体的(民族)文学。如:

He is a professor of literature.

He studies Chinese and English literatures.

2. “It is no wonder + 从句”用法

“It is no wonder + 从句”表示“难怪……”。例如: It is no wonder you've got a headache when you drank so much last night.



1. 阅读下面的故事 (1991 全国高考)

Miss Green was going to give a lecture on Monday afternoon. Yet on Sunday night she was told that she had to go to an important meeting the next day at exactly the same time. "No one can be in two places at once. What shall I do?" she thought. But soon, she had an idea.

At five to three on Monday afternoon Miss Green went along to the lecture room. There were about twenty students waiting there for her. "I'm sorry," she told them, "I won't be able to give my lecture today." The students looked surprised. Miss Green explained that she had an important meeting. "However," she went on, "although I can't be with you myself, my voice can!" Then she put a small tape recorder on the desk. "You see, I've recorded my lecture and you can listen to it without me." Thinking that she had settled the matter, Miss Green turned on the recorder and left.

The meeting finished a little early. Miss Green decided to go back to her students. She stood for a moment outside the lecture room, listening to her own voice. Then very quietly, she opened the door. To her surprise, the room was empty. As she looked around, she saw a number of small recorders all "listening" to her lecture!

"Well," she thought, "if I can be in two places at the same time, why can't they?"

根据故事,用第一人称学生的口吻写一篇英语短文。短文应包含下列内容:

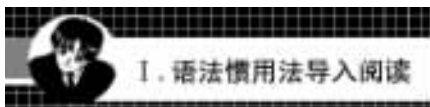
- (1) Miss Green 为什么不能亲自给学生讲课？
- (2) Miss Green 是怎样解决矛盾的？
- (3) 放录音时，学生做了些什么？(请自己设想。)
- (4) 学生为什么没有听完录音？(请自己设想。)
- (5) 学生想出了什么两全其美的办法？

注意：

- (1) 短文长度为 80 ~ 120 个词。要求意思连贯，表达清楚。
- (2) 短文的开头已写在下页，不计入总词数。

A little before three , we were already in the lecture room when our teacher Miss Green came in.

Unit 67



Address at Gettysburg

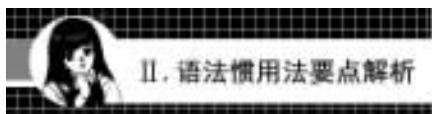
Four score and seven years ago our fathers brought forth on this continent , a new nation , conceived(抱有.....的想法) in Liberty , and dedicated(致力于) to the proposition(事业) that all men are created equal.

Now we are engaged in a great civil war , testing whether that nation , or any nation so conceived and so dedicated , can long endure (忍受). We are met on a great battle-field of that war. We have come to dedicate a portion of that field , as a final resting place for those who here gave their lives that that nation might live. It is altogether fitting and proper that we should do this.

But in a larger sense , we can not dedicate—we can not consecrate(奉为神圣)—we can not hallow(崇敬)—this ground. The brave men , living and dead , who struggled here , have consecrated it , far above our poor power to add or detract(贬低). The world will little note , nor long remember what we say here , but it can never forget what they did here. It is for us the living , rather , to be dedicated here to the unfinished work which they who fought

here have thus far so nobly advanced. It is rather for us to be here dedicated to the great task remaining before us—that from these honored dead we take increased devotion to that cause for which they gave the last full measure of devotion—that we here highly resolve that these dead shall not have died in vain—that this nation, under God, shall have a new birth of freedom—and that government of the people, by the people, for the people, shall not perish(死亡) from the earth.

(278 words)



1. score 及数表达法

英语数字词个位 one, two, three, . . . nine; 十位 ten, eleven, twelve, . . . nineteen; 十位整数 ten, twenty, thirty, . . . 一直到 ninety, 十位数数字词中还有 quarter(十五)和 score(二十); 百位 hundred; 千位 thousand; 百万位 million 等。所有数的概念, 均由这些基本的词汇表达; 而且, 同一个数字可能有多种表达法。如:

70 : seventy ; three score and ten

75 : seventy five ; three score and fifteen

80 : eighty ; four score

87 : eighty seven ; four score and seven

100 : a hundred ; five score

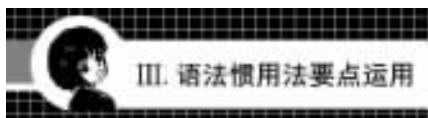
西方人写阿拉伯数字, 喜欢从个位起, 三位一个逗号或空一个格, 这实际上是受英语数表达法的影响, 因为英语大多数表达法是“X million Y thousand. . .”, 如: 215, 365, 000, 英语读作

two hundred and fifteen million three hundred and sixty-five thousand (215 百万 365 千);汉语读作“二亿一千五百三十六万五千”。

阿拉伯数字每三位一个逗号或空格不符合汉语数表达习惯,也不利于汉语数表达法与数读法的反映。不过,一些讲西洋式汉语的人,已经不会讲“三十五万”和“九十八万”,而只会讲“三百五十千”和“九百八十千”等了。

2. remember to VP 和 remember V-ing P 用法

remember to VP 表示“记得要做某事”。如:Remember to go to the post office after school. 而 remember V-ing 表示“记得曾做过某事”。如:Don't you remember seeing the man before? 英语中还有一些动词,用法类似,接 to VP 指要做的或尚未做的事,接 V-ing 指常做的或已做的事。它们是:stop; forget; remember; regret; cease; try; go on; be afraid; be interested; mean; begin; start。



1. 短文改错(2002 春季高考)

此题要求改正所给短文中的错误。对标有题号的每一行做出判断:如无错误,在该行右边横线上画一个勾(√);如有错误(每行只有一个错误),则按下列情况改正:

该行多一个词:把多余的词用斜线(\)划掉,在该行右边横线上写出该词,并用斜线划掉。

该行缺一个词:在缺词处加一个漏字符号(∧),在该行右边横线上写出该加的词。

该行错一个词:在错的词下划一横线,在该行右边横线上写出改正后的词。

注意：原行没有错的不要改。

My brother Tom was very selfish when he was a little boy.

He did not want share things with other people. For 1 _____
example , when he bought a chocolate cake , he but them 2 _____
in a secret place where I couldn't find. Then he 3 _____
ate it all , by himself. He never helped other. 4 _____
He said he is busy. That is , a game of 5 _____
tennis making him very busy. He did not care 6 _____
if something be did made people angry. For 7 _____
instance , on one night he played strong and 8 _____
loudly music till four o'clock in the morning. But 9 _____
HE is difference now. He often helps grandma with 10 _____
housework , helps mom with cooking and helps
his classmates with their lessons.

Key

Unit 1

- (1) class→classes (2)√ (3) it→they (4) what→how
(5) ~~the~~ (6) learn 后面加 why (7) is→are
(8) mysteries 后面加 to (9) learn→learning
(10) practically→practical

2. Sun Shuwei—A World Champion in Diving

Sun Shuwei , a world champion in diving , is a boy of 14 from Guangdong. He loved swimming when he was a small boy and at eight he became a member of the diving team in Guangdong Province. He studied hard at school and trained hard for five years before he came to the national team. A year later in 1990 , he won a gold medal at the 11th Asian Games and became a world champion at the 6th World Swimming Championships early this year.

Unit 2

- (1) ~ (6) BDBDDC
- (1) ~ (4) CCBD

Unit 3

- (1) ~ (5) BEACF
- (1) ~ (3) BDD (4) ~ (6) BDD (7) ~ (9) ABD

Unit 4

- (1) ~ (5) DCACB (6) ~ (10) DBDAC
(11) ~ (15) BDBAC (16) ~ (20) DACAB
(21) ~ (25) ACCDB
- (1) contest 后面加 my (2) schoolmate → schoolmates (3) that
→ whether (4) ✓ (5) as → that (6) ✗ (7) but → and (8) calm
→ calmed (9) is → are (10) ~~often~~

Unit 5

- (1) ~ (5) DBACB (6) ~ (10) ADCCA
(11) ~ (15) BCDDA (16) ~ (20) CBCAB
(21) ~ (25) DABAD

Unit 6

- (1) It is the duty of every citizen to protect our environment.
(2) Please make up your mind/make your decision as early as possible /you can , or you'll miss the good/golden chance/opportunity.
- (3) It's very hard for those who haven't been to the small village to describe its beauty.
- (4) The historical novel about/describing World War I/the First World War is so attractive that I can't bear (to do. . .)/stand parting with it/putting it down (back , aside)/leaving it aside.
- (5) He regretted missing the chance of getting the scholarship.
- (6) The students have come to realize that friendship is more important than money and that a friend in need is a friend indeed.

2. Dear Bob ,

I'm so glad to learn that you're coming in September. I've found a place for you. It's a small flat of 25 square metres , with a bedroom , a bathroom and a kitchen. In the bedroom there is a bed , a sofa , a desk and a chair. The rent is 500 Yuan per month. The flat is in a building on Fangcao Street , which is not far from Jianxin Chinese School. Bus No. 11 can take you straight to the school. In fact , it is only one stop. Do you think you'd like it ? If not , I can try and find another place for you. Just let me know.

Yours ,

Li Hua

Unit 7

1. (1) ~ (4) DADA (5) ~ (8) DCDB
2. (1) There is 后面加 a (2) library → libraries (3) cost → costs
(4) borrow 后面加 as (5) ~~where~~ (6) that → which (7) keep → kept
(8) ✓ (9) for → on (10) ~~popular~~ (11) ~~will~~ (12) whether → if
(13) send → sending (14) ~~to~~ (15) has 后面加 been

Unit 8

1. (1) ~ (6) BABCAB
2. (1) ~ (4) BDAB

Unit 9

1. (1) ~~much~~ (2) ~~was~~ (3) watch → watching (4) Unfortunate → Unfortunately
(5) among → in (6) the → one (7) am → was
(8) a lot 后面加 of (9) ✓ (10) someone → everyone / everybody
2. Chart 1 shows the daily average amount of time the students of the

school spend on different after-class activities. The students put the most time—93 minutes—into their homework, and next in line is watching TV, which takes up 46 minutes. They put in about the same amount of time listening to music and working on the computer, 34 minutes and 30 minutes each. While 25 minutes is spent on sports, only 12 minutes goes into housework.

As is shown on Chart 2, only 10% of the time is taken up with sports activities. I think the school should encourage the students to do more exercise after class. This way, they may be healthier and more energetic.

Unit 10

1. (1)✓ (2)~~in~~ (3)anything→everything (4)my→a (5)~~should~~ (6)talk→talking (7)me→myself (8)showed 后面加 it (9)reads→read (10)word→words

2. Saturday, May 4, 2002-7-9

Cloudy

Li Ming and I took part in a wilderness survival program yesterday, and it has been one of the most unforgettable experiences since high school.

Early in the morning, we set out. Li Ming was carrying a compass and a tent in his backpack, and in mine there was a flashlight, a map, a knife, a first-aid kit, some matches, candles, food, and clothing.

On the way to the campsite, we climbed a hill, and then we swam across a river, pushing the backpacks on a large piece of wood we had found by the river.

As we got into a forest, we lost our way. Luckily, we found the right direction with the compass.

By the time we arrived at the campsite, it had already been dark.

Li Ming then put up the tent , and I made a fire and started cooking.

The two of us spent the night in the forest.

We learned to use knowledge gained in classroom training to solve problems. It was quite an experience for us both , which I'll never forget for the rest of my life.

Unit 11

1. (1) ~ (5)BBAAB (6) ~ (9)CBCC
2. (1) ~ (5)AABDA (6) ~ (10)BDDCB
 (11) ~ (15)DCACB (16) ~ (20)ACDBD

Unit 12

1. (1) ~ (3)DAB
2. In the picture , a boy is tightly tied up in all kinds of training programmes and extra classes , giving up his hobbies. The boy is sad , but he can't free himself and have his own spare time. What a pity !

There is no doubt that youngsters should take in as much knowledge as possible and learn as many techniques as they can. However , it is even more important for parents and teachers to help them grow up to be healthy , strong and intelligent. As the proverb goes , work without play makes Jack a dull boy. In order to have no dull boys , I think , it is wise for the children to decide whatever they like and learn what they think is useful for the society. Only in this way can they grow up happily and creatively. And only in this way will they become the pride of the family , school and society.

Unit 13

1. (1) We are looking forward to attending /taking part in next

week's opening ceremony of film art festival/the opening ceremony of the art festival to be held next week.

(2) If you take/have more physical exercise(s), you will not catch / are not likely to catch a cold easily.

(3) The reason why he didn't pass the driving test was that he lacked practice.

(4) He didn't realize the importance of observing/following/keeping/carrying out the traffic regulations/rules until he was sent into the operating room.

(5) Although she lives (alone) with no relatives or friends, all the/her neighbours offer her a helping hand/offer to help her.

(6) The accident made us realize that safety can't be ignored.

(7) However late it is, he never puts off what must be done today till tomorrow.

(8) Many foreign tourists want to visit the Great Wall. They know that "He who doesn't reach the Great Wall is not a true man."

2. (1) ~ (5) CDCAD (6) ~ (10) BADBC
(11) ~ (15) ADBCA (16) ~ (20) CBADB

Unit 14

1. (1) ~ (6) DDDAAA
2. (1) ~ (5) BFDGC

Unit 15

1. (1) was → am (2) ~~for~~ (3) match → matches (4) Play → Playing
(5) give → gives (6) keep 后面加 it (7) instead 后面加 of
(8) important → importance (9) ~~the~~ (10) they → we

Unit 16

1. (1) ~ (5)BADAA (6) ~ (7)BA

Unit 17

1. (1) ~ (5)BBADB
2. (1) ~ (5)FGCDB

Unit 18

1. (1) ~ (4)BDDBC
2. (1) ~ (3)DCB

Unit 19

1. (1)of→from (2)quietly→quiet (3)well 前加 as (4)to→at
(5)✓ (6)that→why (7)talked→talk (8)stranger→strangers
(9)since→but (10)~~about~~

Unit 20

1. (1) ~ (4)DACA
2. Dear Peter ,

I read in a newspaper today that a “Learn Chinese , Sing Chinese Songs ” Foreigners’ Talent Show will be held in Beijing Television Station on July 18. I know you like singing , and you are in Beijing during that period. I think this is a good chance for you to show your singing talent , and how well you’ve learned Chinese. If you would like to try , you’ll have to go to the TV station to sign up before the end of June. If there is anything I can do for you , I would be more

than glad to help.

Yours ,
Li Hua

Unit 21

1. (1) ~ (3)AAA

2. Dear Andy ,

I am glad to learn that you are coming to China and will stay at my home.

My parents and I are very pleased to have you with us. Now let me tell you what we have arranged for you. I know the school will organize a lot of things for you to do in the morning , but in the afternoon , I'll show you around and take you to some places of interest. We'll mostly stay at home in the evening watching TV , playing games , and meeting people. I'm sure we'll have a wonderful time and enjoy each other's company.

I'm looking forward very much to meeting you soon.

Yours sincerely ,
Li Hua

Unit 22

1. Gentlemen ,

Please send me a catalog and an application for admission.

I am presently a junior at Xin Hua High School , and plan on entering college in the 2004 ~ 2005 academic year. Will you please send me your entrance requirements and examination dates.

Very truly yours ,
Liu Dong

2. (1)on→for (2)much 后面加 to (3)had→have (4)but→and/so (5)~~all~~ (6)prepare→preparing (7)~~in~~ (8)✓ (9)you 后面加 a (10)return→returns

Unit 23

1. (1)~(3)DDC

2. 1. B , had learned 2. A , spoke 3. C , heard 4. D , will be played 5. B , strictly 6. D , much 7. C , its 8. D , did John understand 9. D , a look 10. B , study

Unit 24

1. (1)~(5)AABAC (6)~(7)BC

Unit 25

1. (1)~(5)ABCCB (6)~(10)ADADB
(11)~(15)ACDBD (16)~(20)ACBDA

Unit 26

1. (1)~(6)DDADBC

Unit 27

1. (1)~(4)BACB (5)~(8)BDCB
2. (1)was 后面加 a (2)~~when~~ (3)cooker→cook (4)but→and (5)✓ (6)about 后面加 to (7)Shake→Shaking (8)apologize →apologized (9)me→myself (10)month→months

Unit 28

1. (1)~(5)ABAAB (6)~(7)AD

Unit 29

1. (1) ~ (5)CCABC (6) ~ (10)ACAAD
2. (1) ~ (5)ADCAD

Unit 30

1. (1) ~ (6)ACDABB
2. (1) ~ (3)ACB

Unit 31

1. (1) ~ (5)BDCDA (6) ~ (9)DBBA
2. (1) ~ (5)CBCDA (6) ~ (10)CDABC
(11) ~ (15)DAACB

Unit 32

1. (1) ~ (5)CDCBA (6) ~ (10)ABDCC
(11) ~ (15)ADBBD (16) ~ (20)BDABD

Unit 33

1. (1) ~ (5)CBBCC
2. (1) ~ (5)BDFAG

Unit 34

1. (1)Indian summer (2)drizzles (3)changeable (4)shower
(5)chilly
2. (1)it's 后面加 a (2)✓ (3)noon 后面加 when (4)them→
us (5)visiting→visited (6)picture→pictures (7)passes→passed
(8)~~down~~ (9)and→but (10)~~at~~

Unit 35

1. (1) ~ (5) CDCBA

Unit 36

1. Dear Peter ,

Our school is planning to hold an American Film Festival next month. I'm writing to ask you to come and give a talk on American films and filmmaking industry. It will help us understand how the industry has developed into big business as it is today. This understanding should go a long way toward increasing their knowledge of American culture in general. Do you think one and a half hours will be enough? Please let me know as soon as possible so that I can make arrangements.

I'm looking forward to seeing you and enjoying the talk.

With best wishes ,

Yours ,

Li Hua

2. (1) ~ (3) DCA

Unit 37

1. Dear students ,

The Students Union has decided to organize a music week. It will be held in the first week of May. The activities include singing pop songs and playing classical and folk music. Bring your own musical instruments , please. A music contest will be included , too. The students taking part in the contest will listen to part of a song or a piece of music , and then guess where it comes from. If you'd like to

take part in the music week , please come and sign up for it before April 20th ,The place for the activities will be announced later.

Come to the great fun !

Students Union

Unit 38

- (1) ~ (4) ABCC
- (1) ~ (5) CABDB (6) ~ (10) ACDAD
(11) ~ (15) BCABC (16) ~ (20) ADBCD

Unit 39

- (1) so → and (2) ✓ (3) will 后面加 be (4) then → now
(5) once → any (6) ~~in~~ (7) to → for (8) go → going (9) was → is
(10) his → their

Unit 40

- (1) ~ (4) BCAD
- (1) ~ (5) DBGCE

Unit 41

- (1) ~ (4) DDCC (5) ~ (7) CDC

Unit 42

- (1) ~ (5) DBCDA
- (1) ~ (5) GEDBC

Unit 43

- (1) ~ (5) BBDBC

2. June 1st, 1995

Dear Peter,

We're so glad you're coming to join us on Sunday. Here is how you can find us. We'll have our picnic in the People's Park. You know where that is, don't you? After you enter the park by the main gate, walk straight on till you come to a stream. Cross the stream and turn right. After walking for a while you'll come to a hill. Walk around to the other side of the hill. There you'll see a lake. We'll have our picnic there in the small woods by the lake. I'm sure you'll have no trouble finding us. Do come!

Yours,

Li Hua

Unit 44

1. (1) ~ (4) ADAD (5) ~ (8) CCBB

2. The other day my brother and I went to the cinema by bicycle. My brother was riding with me sitting on the seat behind. As we came to the crossroads a young man and a girl came up and stopped us. "We've found you at long last," they said. But we didn't know them. Pointing to a policeman not far away, the young man explained, "He stopped us about half an hour ago and made us catch the next offender. So come on, stand here. Hope you don't have to wait as long as we did. Good luck."

Unit 45

1. It was 7:15 on the morning of February 8, 2000. I was walking along Park Road towards the east when an elderly man came out of the park on the other side of the street. Then I saw a yellow car drive

up Third Street and make a right turn into Park Road. The next moment the car hit the man while he was crossing the road. He fell with a cry. The car didn't stop but drove off at great speed heading west. I noticed the driver was a young woman and the plate number was AC864. About two minutes later I stopped a passing car and took the old man to the nearest hospital.

Yours ,
Li Hua

Unit 46

1. (1) ~ (4) ABDC

Unit 47

1. (1) ~ (3) DBD

2. Some of them think that English learning should start from childhood. As little boys and girls have a very good memory , they can learn a lot of English words by heart. This will help them lay a solid foundation for their future English learning. But others do not agree. Young children have to learn Chinese Pinyin at school. If they study Chinese Pinyin and English at the same time , it will be very easy for them to mix them up. This will do a lot of harm not only to their Chinese learning but also to their future English learning. In short , the students have not arrived at any agreement yet.

Unit 48

1. (1) ~ (4) AB BB

2. (1) in → out (2) easy 前加 an (3) ~~for~~ (4) from → of (5) opening → opened (6) answer → answers (7) but → so (8) don't →

didn't (9)punish 后加 me (10)✓

Unit 49

1. (1)~(4)ABAA

Unit 50

1. (1)~(5)CBDAC (6)~(10)ADBBB
(11)~(15)ACDBD (16)~(20)CBADC
(21)~(25)ABDAC

Unit 51

1. (1)~(6)ADCBCC

2. Dear Editor ,

I'm writing to tell you about the discussion we've had about whether an entrance fee should be charged for parks.

Opinions are divided on the question. 60% of the students are against the idea of entrance fees. They believed a public park should be free of charge. People need a place where they can rest and enjoy themselves. Charging entrance fees will no doubt keep some people away. What is more , it will become necessary to build gates and walls , which will do harm to the appearance of a city.

On the other hand , 40% think that fees should be charged because you need money to pay gardeners and other workers and to buy plants and young trees. They suggest , however , fees should be charged low.

Yours truly ,
Li Hua

Unit 52

1. My parents live in the country. They keep a dog called Ah Fu. One day my parents went to work in the fields taking my little sister and Ah Fu along. While they were working, my sister walked to a river nearby. Ah Fu followed her there. She was trying to pick a flower when she fell into the river. Ah Fu barked and jumped into the water immediately. When my parents heard Ah Fu barking they ran to the river. They saw Ah Fu swimming towards the bank carrying my little sister. My parents praised Ah Fu warmly. It was our brave Ah Fu who had saved my little sister.

Unit 53

1. (1) ~ (6) BBCCDB

2. (1) any → many/some (2) Because 后面加 of (3) ~~be~~ (4) read → reading (5) program → programs (6) noise → noisy (7) On → In (8) ✓ (9) to (10) real → really

Unit 54

1. (1) ~ (3) BDA

2. Dear Bob,

It's very kind of you to write me and let me know about your beautiful city. Now I'd like to tell you something about my hometown Jiangcheng.

The city stands on the bank of the Changjiang River. It is a beautiful place for people to live in. Its economy has been developing rapidly in the past ten years. New factories, houses and have been built. More schools and hospitals are available for its people. However, there

are some problems , such as water and air pollution and heavy traffic in rush hours. In my opinion , Jiangcheng should develop its economy scientifically. I would also think that the growth population should be brought under control so that we'll have a better hometown in future.

Yours ,
Xiaohua

Unit 55

1. Story of a Tree

Once there was a family living in a cabin under a huge tree. Its strong branches and thick leaves kept the family safe from the wind and rain. Sometime later , they felled down the tree with an ax , as they were building another cabin. They needed the wood for its walls and the branches and leaves for its roof. But before the completion of the new cabin , there came a storm. And strong winds blew away the roofs of both the old and new cabins , because the tree was no longer to protect the place from the wind.

Unit 56

1. (1) ~ (5) BDDCA (6) ~ (10) DABCD
(11) ~ (15) ABCBA (16) ~ (20) ACBCD

Unit 57

1. (1) ~ (4) DACB (5) ~ (8) BDAA
2. (1) ~ (4) ADBD

Unit 58

1. (1) ~ (4) CABA

Unit 59

1. (1) ~ (4) CCBC

2. (1) kinds → kinds of (2) minute → minutes (3) have → having
(4) ~~even~~ (5) ✓ (6) They → There (7) person → personal (8)
easily → easy (9) are → is (10) like → as

Unit 60

1. 略

2. 1. what's the matter with you 2. nothing about it 3. As usual
4. it's my weak point 5. be careful

3. Dear Bill ,

Very glad to receive your letter of July 13. Thank you for your congratulations. I was very excited when I heard that Beijing won the bid for the 2008 Olympic Games , Immediately I called Wei Guo and Li Hong to my house. After a brief discussion we decided to put up a wall newspaper for our class. We hurried to our classroom and began to work. Wei Guo wrote a poem. Li Hong copied some news from the newspapers. I threw an Olympic flag. The next Monday , our classmates were both surprised and overjoyed when they saw the wall newspaper.

I hope you can come to China to watch the Olympic Games in 2008. Then I'll be very happy to be your guide.

Sincerely yours ,

Zhang Hua

Unit 61

1. (1) ~ (5) AAAAAA

(6) ~ (7) BA

Unit 62

1. (1) ~ (3)ACD

Unit 63

1. (1) ~ (5)BDBAA
2. (1) ~ (3)CCA

Unit 64

1. (1) ~ (5)BAADB (6) ~ (10)BACDC

Unit 65

1. (1) ~ (5)BADCA (6) ~ (10)BCDAC

Unit 66

1. A little before three , we were already in the lecture room when our teacher Miss Green came in. She said she couldn't give us the lecture because she had to go to an important meeting. However , she had recorded her lecture for us. So she put a recorder on the desk , turned it on , and left.

We listened to the lecture for a while. Some of us even took notes. But there would be a film at four. We were all eager to go. What should we do ? We started to whisper. " Why can't we do the same as Miss Green ?" someone suggested. " Good idea !" many of us cried out immediately. Happily we walked out of the room , leaving our recorders there.

Unit 67

1. (1)want 后面加 to (2)them→it (3)where→which/that
(4)other-others (5)is→was (6)making→made (7)✓ (8)~~on~~
(9)loudly→loud (10)difference→different